Essential Grammar in Use

A self-study reference and practice book for elementary learners of English

Fourth Edition with answers

Raymond Murphy
Contents

Acknowledgements vii
To the student viii
To the teacher x

Present
1 am/is/are
2 am/is/are (questions)
3 I am doing (present continuous)
4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)
5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
6 I don't ... (present simple negative)
7 Do you ... ? (present simple questions)
8 I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)
9 I have ... and I've got ...

Past
10 was/were
11 worked/got/went etc. (past simple)
12 I didn't ... Did you ... ? (past simple negative and questions)
13 I was doing (past continuous)
14 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

Present perfect
15 I have done (present perfect 1)
16 I've just ... I've already ... I haven't ... yet (present perfect 2)
17 Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)
18 How long have you ... ? (present perfect 4)
19 for since ago
20 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

Passive
21 is done was done (passive 1)
22 is being done has been done (passive 2)

Verb forms
23 be/have/do in present and past tenses
24 Regular and irregular verbs

Future
25 What are you doing tomorrow?
26 I'm going to ...
27 will/shall 1
28 will/shall 2
Modals, imperative etc.

29 might
30 can and could
31 must mustn’t don’t need to
32 should
33 I have to ...
34 Would you like ...? I’d like ...
35 Do this! Don’t do that! Let’s do this!
36 I used to ...

There and it
37 there is there are
38 there was/were there has/have been there will be
39 It ...

Auxiliary verbs
40 I am, I don’t etc.
41 Have you? Are you? Don’t you? etc.
42 too/either so am I / neither do I etc.
43 isn’t, haven’t, don’t etc. (negatives)

Questions
44 is it ...? have you ...? do they ...? etc. (questions 1)
45 Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)
46 Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)
47 What ...? Which ...? How ...? (questions 4)
48 How long does it take ...?
49 Do you know where ...? I don’t know what ... etc.

Reported speech
50 She said that ... He told me that ...

-ing and to ...
51 work/working go/going do/doing
52 to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)
53 I want you to ... I told you to ...
54 I went to the shop to ...

Go, get, do, make and have
55 go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing
56 get
57 do and make
58 have

Pronouns and possessives
59 I/me he/him they/them etc.
60 my/his/their etc.
61 Whose is this? It’s mine/yours/hers etc.
62 I/me/my/mine
63 myself/yourself/ themselves etc.
64 -’s (Kate’s camera / my brother’s car etc.)
### A and the
65 a/an ...
66 train(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)
67 a bottle / some water (countable/uncountable 1)
68 a cake / some cake / some cakes (countable/uncountable 2)
69 a/an and the
70 the ...
71 go to work go home go to the cinema
72 I like music I hate exams
73 the ... (names of places)

### Determiners and pronouns
74 this/that/these/those
75 one/ones
76 some and any
77 not + any no none
78 not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing
79 somebody/anything/nowhere etc.
80 every and all
81 all most some any no/none
82 both either neither
83 a lot much many
84 (a) little (a) few

### Adjectives and adverbs
85 old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)
86 quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)
87 old/older expensive / more expensive
88 older than ... more expensive than ...
89 not as ... as
90 the oldest the most expensive
91 enough
92 too

### Word order
93 He speaks English very well. (word order 1)
94 always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)
95 still yet already
96 Give me that book! Give it to me!

### Conjunctions and clauses
97 and but or so because
98 When ...
99 If we go ... If you see ... etc.
100 If I had ... If we went ... etc.
101 a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)
102 the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

*IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH UNITS TO STUDY, USE THE STUDY GUIDE ON PAGE 271*
Prepositions
103 at 8 o'clock on Monday in April
104 from ... to until since for
105 before after during while
106 in at on (places 1)
107 in at on (places 2)
108 to in at (places 3)
109 under, behind, opposite etc.
110 up, over, through etc.
111 on at by with about
112 afraid of ... good at ... etc. of/at/for etc. (prepositions) + -ing
113 listen to ..., look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)

Phrasal verbs
114 go in, fall off, run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)
115 put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)

Appendices
Appendix 1 Active and passive 243
Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 244
Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 245
Appendix 4 Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.) 246
Appendix 5 Spelling 248
Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.) 250
Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.) 251

Additional exercises 252

Study guide 271

Key to Exercises 283
Key to Additional exercises 310
Key to Study guide 313

Index 315
This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 115 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (Contents).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you need to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (I have been, he has done etc.), study Units 15–20.

Use the Contents or the Index (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) that you need.

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use the Study guide at the back of the book.
Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:

Study the left-hand page (information), and then do the exercises on the right-hand page.

Use the Key to check your answers. The Key is on pages 283–309.

Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

Don’t forget the seven Appendices at the back of the book (pages 243–251). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

There are also Additional exercises at the back of the book (pages 252–270). There is a list of these exercises on page 252.
To the teacher

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It does not deal with other aspects of the language.
- It is for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It is a reference book with exercises. It is not a course book and is not organised progressively.
- It is addressed to learners and intended for self-study.

Organisation of the book

There are 115 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are not ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should not be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the Contents and there is a comprehensive Index at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven Appendices (pages 243–251) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

At the back of the book there is a set of Additional exercises (pages 252–270). These exercises provide 'mixed' practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (especially those concerning verb forms). There are 35 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 252.

Also at the back of the book there is a Study guide to help students decide which units to study – see page 271. Finally, there is a Key (pages 283–309) for students to check their answers to all the exercises in the book. An edition without the Study guide and Key is available for teachers who would prefer it for their students.

Level

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but not for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the early stages of a beginners’ course. It could also be used by low-intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of basic grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see To the student) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for teachers to present the grammar point in their preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.
Unit 1

am/is/are

positive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am</th>
<th>(I'm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(he's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(she's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>(it's)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>(we're)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>(you're)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>(they're)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>am not</th>
<th>(I'm not)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>(he's not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>(she's not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>(it's not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>(we're not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>(you're not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>(they're not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

short form

I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
Steve is ill. He's in bed.
My brother is scared of dogs.
It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
Ann and I are good friends.
Your keys are on the table.
I'm tired, but I'm not hungry.
Lisa isn't interested in politics. She's interested in art.
James isn't a teacher. He's a student.
Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
It's sunny today, but it isn't warm.

that's = that is   there's = there is   here's = here is

Thank you. That's very kind of you.
Look! There's Chris.
'Here's your key.' 'Thank you.'
Exercises

1.1 Write the short form (she's / we aren't etc.).
1 she is  she's  2 they are
3 it is not  4 that is
5 I am not  6 you are not

1.2 Write am, is or are.
1 The weather is nice today.  5 Look! There is Helen.
2 I am not rich.  6 My brother and I are good tennis players.
3 This bag is heavy.  7 Emily is at home. Her children are at school.
4 These bags are heavy.  8 I am a taxi driver. My sister is a nurse.

1.3 Complete the sentences.
1 Steve is ill. He's in bed.
2 I'm not hungry, but I'm thirsty.
3 Mr Thomas is a very old man. He's 98.
4 These chairs aren't beautiful, but they are comfortable.
5 The weather is nice today. It's warm and sunny.
6 'It's late.' 'No, I'm not. I'm early!'
7 Catherine isn't at home. She is at work.
8 'Are you coats.' 'Oh, thank you very much.'

1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences in 1A. Now write sentences about yourself.
1 (name?) My name is .................................................. 5 (favourite colour or colours?) My favourite colour is ..................................................
2 (age?) I ................................................................................. My age is ..................................................
3 (from?) I .................................................................................. 6 (interested in ... ?) I'm interested in ..................................................
4 (job?) I .................................................................................. I am ..................................................

1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use:
angry cold hot hungry scared thirsty
1 She's thirsty.  3 He is angry
2 They are cold.  4 It's hot

1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use is/isn't or are/aren't.
1 (it / hot today) It isn't hot today. or It's hot today.
2 (it / windy today) It is windy today.
3 (my hands / cold) My hands are cold.
4 (Brazil / a very big country) Brazil is a very big country.
5 (diamonds / cheap) Diamonds are not cheap.
6 (Toronto / in the US) Toronto is in the US.

Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use I'm / I'm not.
7 (tired) I'm tired. or I'm not tired.
8 (hungry) I'm hungry or I'm not hungry.
9 (a good swimmer) I'm a good swimmer or I'm not a good swimmer.
10 (interested in football) I'm interested in football or I'm not interested in football.
Unit 2

am/is/are (questions)

Unit 44

positive | question
---------|---------
I am | am?
he is | he?
she is | she?
it is | it?
we are | we?
you are | you?
they are | they?

What's your name?
- David.

Are you married?
- No, I'm not.

How old are you?
- 25.

Are you a student?
- Yes, I am.

‘Am I late?’ ‘No, you’re on time.’

‘Is your mother at home?’ ‘No, she’s out.’

‘Are your parents at home?’ ‘No, they’re out.’

‘Is it cold in your room?’ ‘Yes, a little.’

Your shoes are nice. Are they new?

We say:
- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? (not Is at home your mother?)
- Are they new? / Are your shoes new? (not Are new your shoes?)

Where ...? / What ...? / Who ...? / How ...? / Why ...?

Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- ‘Where are you from?’ ‘Canada.’
- ‘What colour is your car?’ ‘It’s red.’
- ‘How old is Joe?’ ‘He’s 24.’
- How are your parents? Are they well?
- These shoes are nice. How much are they?
- This hotel isn’t very good. Why is it so expensive?

what’s = what is who’s = who is how’s = how is where’s = where is
- What’s the time?
- Where’s Lucy?
- Who’s that man?
- How’s your father?

Short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am.</th>
<th>I’m not.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he is.</td>
<td>he’s not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is.</td>
<td>she’s not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is.</td>
<td>it’s not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are.</td>
<td>we’re not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are.</td>
<td>you’re not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are.</td>
<td>they’re not.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No,</th>
<th>No,</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he isn’t.</td>
<td>he isn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she isn’t.</td>
<td>she isn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it isn’t.</td>
<td>it isn’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we aren’t.</td>
<td>we aren’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you aren’t.</td>
<td>you aren’t.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they aren’t.</td>
<td>they aren’t.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am.’

‘Are you hungry?’ ‘No, I’m not, but I’m thirsty.’

‘Is your friend English?’ ‘Yes, he is.’

‘Are these your keys?’ ‘Yes, they are.’

‘That’s my seat.’ ‘No, it isn’t.’

am/is/are → Unit 1  questions → Unit 44  what/which/how → Unit 47
Exercises

2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

Where's the camera? A London.
Is your car blue? B No, I'm not.
Is Kate from London? C Yes, you are.
Am I late? D My sister.
Where's Amy from? E Black.
What colour is your bag? F No, it's black.
Are you hungry? G In your bag.
How is George? H Very well.
Who's that woman? I No, she's American.

2.2 Make questions with these words.

1 (is / at home / your mother) Is your mother at home?
2 (your parents / are / well) Are your parents well?
3 (interesting / is / your job) Is your job interesting?
4 (the shops / are / open today) Are the shops open today?
5 (from / where / you / are) Where are you from?
6 (interested in sport / you / are) Are you interested in sport?
7 (is / near here / the station) Is the station near here?
8 (at school / are / your children) Are your children at school?
9 (you / are / late / why) Why are you late?

2.3 Complete the questions. Use What ... / Who ... / Where ... / How ....

How are your parents? They're very well.
the bus stop? At the end of the street.
your children? Five, six and ten.
these oranges? £1.50 a kilo.
your favourite sport? Skiing.
the man in this photo? That's my father.
your new shoes? Black.

2.4 Write the questions.

What's your name? Paul.
(name?) What's your name?
American? No, I'm Australian.
(how old?) How old?
a teacher? Yes, I am.
(married?) Are you married?
(wife a lawyer?) No, she's a designer.
(from?) Where?
(her name?) Her name?
(how old?) How old?

2.5 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't. etc.).

Are you married? No, I'm not.
Are you thirsty? No.
Is it cold today? Yes.
Are your hands cold? Yes.
Is it dark now? No.
Are you a teacher? Yes.

Additional exercises 1–2 (pages 252–53)
**I am doing** (present continuous)

The present continuous is:

**am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing etc.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>I</strong></th>
<th>am (not)</th>
<th>I’m working. I’m not watching TV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>is (not)</td>
<td>Maria is reading a newspaper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>is (not)</td>
<td>She isn’t eating. (or She’s not eating.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>The bus is coming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>are (not)</td>
<td>We’re having dinner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>are (not)</td>
<td>You’re not listening to me. (or You aren’t listening ...)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| they | are (not)| The children are doing their homework.

**am/is/are + -ing = something is happening now:**

**I’m working**

she’s *wearing* a hat

they’re *playing* football

I’m *not watching* TV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Please be quiet. I’m working ( = I’m working now)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Look, there’s Sarah. She’s wearing a brown coat. (= she is wearing it now)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The weather is nice. It’s not raining.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Where are the children?’ ‘They’re playing in the park.’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(on the phone) We’re having dinner now. Can I call you later?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can turn off the television. I’m not watching it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

come → coming  write → writing  dance → dancing  
run → running  sit → sitting  swim → swimming  lie → lying

*am/is/are → Unit 1  are you doing? (questions) → Unit 4  I am doing and I do → Unit 8  
What are you doing tomorrow? → Unit 25*
What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

-eat- have lie play sit wait

1. She's eating an apple.
2. For a bus.
3. They football.
4. on the floor.
5. breakfast.
6. on the table.

Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

build cook go have stand stay swim work

1. Please be quiet. I'm working ....
2. 'Where's John?' 'He's in the kitchen. He .................................................................'
3. 'You ..............................................................on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'
4. Look! Somebody ................................................................in the river.
5. We're here on holiday. We ................................................................at the Central Hotel.
6. 'Where's Sue?' ‘She ..............................................................a shower.’
7. They .............................................................a new hotel in the city centre at the moment.
8. I........................................................................ now. Goodbye.

Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use She's -ing or She isn't -ing.

1. (have dinner) Jane isn't having dinner. Jane is having dinner.
2. (watch TV) She's watching TV.
3. (sit on the floor) She
4. (read a book)
5. (play the piano)
6. (laugh)
7. (wear a hat)
8. (drink coffee)

What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1. (I / wash / my hair) I'm not washing my hair. I am washing my hair.
2. (it / snow) It's snowing or It isn't snowing.
3. (I / sit / on a chair)
4. (I / eat)
5. (it / rain)
6. (I / learn / English)
7. (I / listen / to music)
8. (the sun / shine)
9. (I / wear / shoes)
10. (I / read / a newspaper)
are you doing?
(present continuous questions)

positive question

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am doing</th>
<th>am I doing</th>
<th>am I doing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he is doing</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>is working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she is doing</td>
<td>going</td>
<td>is going</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is doing</td>
<td>staying</td>
<td>is staying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we are doing</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>we are doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are doing</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>you are doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they are doing</td>
<td>etc.</td>
<td>they are doing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


'O Are you feeling OK?' 'Yes, I'm fine, thanks.'
'O Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
'O Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.'
'O 'What's Paul doing?' 'He's studying for his exams.'
'O 'What are the children doing?' 'They're watching TV.'
'O Look, there's Emily! Where's she going?'
'O Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?'

Study the word order:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>is/are + subject + -ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is he working today?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is Ben working today?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not Is working Ben today?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where are they going?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where are those people going?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Short answers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I am.</th>
<th>I'm not.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he she it</td>
<td>he she it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you they</td>
<td>we you they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


'O 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I am.'
'O 'Is Ben working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
'O 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
'O 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't. They're staying with me.'

---

'What are you doing tomorrow?' — Unit 25 questions — Units 44–47
Exercises

4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

1. (you / watch / it?) Are you watching it?
   - No, you can turn it off.
2. (you / go / now?)
   - Yes, see you tomorrow.
3. (it / rain?)
   - No, not at the moment.
4. (you / enjoy / the film?)
   - Yes, it’s very funny.
5. (that clock / work?)
   - No, it’s broken.
6. (you / wait / for a bus?)
   - No, for a taxi.

4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use:

cry  eat  go  laugh  look at  read

1. What ___________?
   - reading
2. Where ___________?
3. What ___________?
4. Why ___________?
5. What ___________?
6. Why ___________?

4.3 Make questions from these words. Put the words in the right order.

1. (is / working / Ben / today) ___________?
2. (what / the children / are / doing) ___________?
3. (you / are / listening / to me) ___________?
4. (where / your friends / are / going) ___________?
5. (are / watching / your parents / TV) ___________?
6. (what / Jessica / is / cooking) ___________?
7. (why / you / are / looking / at me) ___________?
8. (is / coming / the bus) ___________?

4.4 Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn’t. etc.).

1. Are you watching TV? ___________.
2. Are you wearing a watch? ___________.
3. Are you eating something? ___________.
4. Is it raining? ___________.
5. Are you sitting on the floor? ___________.
6. Are you feeling well? ___________.

→ Additional exercise 3 (page 253)
I do/work/like etc. (present simple)

They read / he likes / I work etc. = the present simple:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>work</th>
<th>live</th>
<th>watch</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>reads</td>
<td>likes</td>
<td>works</td>
<td>lives</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td>does</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember:
he works / she lives / it rains etc.

| I work in a shop. My brother works in a bank. (not My brother work) |
| Lucy lives in London. Her parents live in Scotland. |
| It rains a lot in winter. |

I have → he/she/it has:

| Joe has a shower every day. |

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

- **es** after **-s** / **-sh** / **-ch**:
  - pass → passes
  - finish → finishes
  - watch → watches

- **-y** → **-ies**:
  - study → studies
  - try → tries

- **also**:
  - do → does
  - go → goes

We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

| I like big cities. |
| Your English is good. You speak very well. |
| Tom works very hard. He starts at 7.30 and finishes at 8 o'clock in the evening. |
| The earth goes round the sun. |
| We do a lot of different things in our free time. |
| It costs a lot of money to build a hospital. |

always/never/often/usually/sometimes + present simple

| Sue always gets to work early. (not Sue gets always) |
| I never eat breakfast. (not I eat never) |
| We often go away at weekends. |
| Mark usually plays football on Sundays. |
| I sometimes walk to work, but not very often. |

I don’t ... (negative) → Unit 6
Do you ...? (questions) → Unit 7
I am doing and I do → Unit 8
always/usually/often etc. (word order) → Unit 94
Exercises

5.1 Write these verbs with -s or -es.

1. (read) she ______
2. (think) he ______
3. (fly) it ______
4. (dance) he ______
5. (have) she ______
6. (finish) it ______

5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use:

- eat
- go
- live
- play
- play
- sleep

1. He plays ___________ the piano.
2. They ___________ in a very big house.
3. ___________ a lot of fruit.
4. ___________ tennis.
5. ___________ to the cinema a lot.
6. ___________ seven hours a night.

5.3 Complete the sentences. Use:

- boil
- close
- cost
- cost
- like
- like
- meet
- open
- speak
- teach
- wash

1. Maria _______ four languages.
2. The shops in the city centre usually _______ at 9 o'clock in the morning.
3. The City Museum _______ at 5 o'clock in the evening.
4. Tina is a teacher. She _______ mathematics to young children.
5. My job is very interesting. I _______ a lot of people.
6. Peter's car is always dirty. He never _______ it.
7. Food is expensive. It _______ a lot of money.
8. Shoes are expensive. They _______ a lot of money.
9. Water _______ at 100 degrees Celsius.
10. Laura and I are good friends. I _______ her and she _______ me.

5.4 Write sentences from these words. Use the right form of the verb (arrive or arrives etc.).

1. (always / early / Sue / arrive) ______
2. (to the cinema / never / I / go) ______
3. (work / Martina / hard / always) ______
4. (like / chocolate / children / usually) ______
5. (Jackie / parties / enjoy / always) ______
6. (often / people's names / I / forget) ______
7. (TV / Sam / watch / never) ______
8. (usually / dinner / we / have / at 7.30) ______
9. (Kate / always / nice clothes / wear) ______

5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/usually/sometimes.

1. (watch TV in the evening) ______
2. (read in bed) ______
3. (get up before 7 o'clock) ______
4. (go to work/school by bus) ______
5. (drink coffee in the morning) ______
I don’t … (present simple negative)

The present simple negative is don’t/doesn’t + verb:

She doesn’t drink coffee.

He doesn’t like his job.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work</td>
<td>I don’t work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we like</td>
<td>we don’t like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you do</td>
<td>you don’t do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they have</td>
<td>they don’t have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he works</td>
<td>he doesn’t work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she likes</td>
<td>she doesn’t like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it has</td>
<td>it doesn’t have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I drink coffee, but I don’t drink tea.
- Sue drinks tea, but she doesn’t drink coffee.
- You don’t work very hard.
- We don’t watch TV very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It doesn’t rain very often.
- Sam and Chris don’t know many people.

Remember:

I/we/you/they don’t …
he/she/it doesn’t …

- I don’t like football.
- He doesn’t like football.
- I don’t like Fred and Fred doesn’t like me. (not Fred don’t like)
- My car doesn’t use much petrol. (not My car don’t use)
- Sometimes he is late, but it doesn’t happen very often.

We use don’t/doesn’t + infinitive (don’t like / doesn’t speak / doesn’t do etc.):

- I don’t like washing the car. I don’t do it very often.
- Sarah speaks Spanish, but she doesn’t speak Italian. (not doesn’t speaks)
- David doesn’t do his job very well. (not David doesn’t his job)
- Paula doesn’t usually have breakfast. (not doesn’t … has)
Exercises

6.1 Write the negative.
1 I play the piano very well.
   I don't play the piano very well.
2 Anna plays the piano very well.
   Anna
3 They know my phone number.
   They
4 We work very hard.
5 He has a bath every day.
6 You do the same thing every day.

6.2 Study the information and write sentences with like.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Ben and Sophie</th>
<th>Kate</th>
<th>You</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>classical music?</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>boxing?</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>horror movies?</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.3 Write about yourself. Use:
I never ... or I often ... or I don't ... very often.
1 (watch TV)
   I don't watch TV very often. or I never watch TV. or
   I often watch TV.
2 (go to the theatre)
3 (ride a bike)
4 (eat in restaurants)
5 (travel by train)

6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use don't/doesn't + these verbs:
cost  go  know  rain  see  use  wear
1 The weather here is usually nice. It doesn't rain much.
2 Paul has a car, but he doesn't use it very often.
3 Paul and his friends like films, but they don't go to the cinema very often.
4 Amanda is married, but she doesn't wear a ring.
5 I don't know much about politics. I'm not interested in it.
6 The Regent Hotel isn't expensive. It doesn't cost much to stay there.
7 Ed lives very near us, but we don't see him very often.

6.5 Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.
1 Margaret speaks four languages — English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
2 I don't like my job. It's very boring. (like)
3 'Where's Steve?' 'I'm sorry. I don't know.' (know)
4 Sue is a very quiet person. She doesn't talk very much. (talk)
5 Andy drinks a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink)
6 It's not true! I believe it! (believe)
7 That's a very beautiful picture. I don't like it very much. (like)
8 Mark is a vegetarian. He doesn't eat meat. (eat)
**Unit 7**

**Do you ... ? (present simple questions)**

We use **do/does** in present simple questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work</td>
<td>Do I work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we like</td>
<td>Do we like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do have</td>
<td>Do you have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they work</td>
<td>Do they work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he likes</td>
<td>Does he like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she does</td>
<td>Does she do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it has</td>
<td>Does it have?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study the word order:

**do/does + subject + infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do you play the guitar?</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>play</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do your friends live near here?</td>
<td>your friends</td>
<td>live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does Chris work on Sundays?</td>
<td>Chris</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does it rain a lot here?</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do your parents live?</td>
<td>your parents</td>
<td>live</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often do you wash your hair?</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>wash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What does this word mean?</td>
<td>this word</td>
<td>mean?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How much does it cost to fly to Rome?</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Questions with **always** and **usually**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What do you do? = What's your job?</th>
<th>Do Chris always work on Sundays? at weekends?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘What do you do?’ = ‘I work in a bank.’</td>
<td>‘Do Chris always work on Sundays?’ = ‘Yes, he does.’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember:

- **do** I/we/you/they ...  
- **does** he/she/it ...

| Short answers |  
|---------------|---|
| Yes, I/we/you/they do. | No, I/we/you/they don’t. |
| he/she/it does. | he/she/it doesn’t. |

- ‘Do you play the guitar?’ ‘No, I don’t.’
- ‘Do your parents speak English?’ ‘Yes, they do.’
- ‘Does James work hard?’ ‘Yes, he does.’
- ‘Does your sister live in London?’ ‘No, she doesn’t.’
Exercises

7.1 Write questions with Do ... ? and Does ... ?
1 I like chocolate. How about you?  
2 I play tennis. How about you?  
3 You live near here. How about Lucy?  
4 Tom plays tennis. How about his friends?  
5 You speak English. How about your brother?  
6 I do yoga every morning. How about you?  
7 Sue goes away a lot. How about Paul?  
8 I want to be famous. How about you?  
9 You work hard. How about Anna?

7.2 Make questions from these words + do/does. Put the words in the right order.
1 (where / live / your parents)  Where do your parents live?  
2 (you / early / always / get up)  Do you always get up early?  
3 (how often / TV / you / watch)  
4 (you / want / what / for dinner)  
5 (like / you / football)  
6 (your brother / like / football)  
7 (what / you / do / in your free time)  
8 (your sister / work / where)  
9 (breakfast / always / you / have)  
10 (what / mean / this word)  
11 (in winter / snow / it / here)  
12 (go / usually / to bed / what time / you)  
13 (how much / to phone New York / it / cost)  
14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what)

7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs: do enjoy go like start teach work

1 What do you do?  
2 What time do you work on Saturdays?  
3 I work in a bookshop.  
   It's OK.  
   At 9 o'clock.  
   Sometimes.  
   Usually by bus.  
   He's a teacher.  
   Science.  
   Yes, he loves it.

7.4 Write short answers (Yes, he does. / No, I don't. etc.).
1 Do you watch TV a lot?  No, I don't.  
2 Do you live in a big city?  
3 Do you often ride a bike?  
4 Does it rain a lot where you live?  
5 Do you play the piano?  

→ Additional exercises 4–7 (pages 253–54)
Unit 8

I am doing (present continuous) and I do (present simple)

Jack is watching television.
He is not playing the guitar.

But Jack has a guitar.
He often plays it and he plays very well.

Jack plays the guitar,
but he is not playing the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar?  No, he isn't. (present continuous)
Does he play the guitar? Yes, he does. (present simple)

Present continuous (I am doing) = now, at the time of speaking:

I'm doing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Please be quiet. I'm working. (not I work)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom is having a shower at the moment. (not Tom has)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take an umbrella with you. It's raining.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why are you under the table? What are you doing?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Present simple (I do) = in general, all the time or sometimes:

I do

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>now</th>
<th>future</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I work every day from 9 o'clock to 5.30.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tom has a shower every morning.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It rains a lot in winter.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't watch TV very often.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do you usually do at weekends?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We do not use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

like want know understand remember
prefer need mean believe forget

Use only the present simple with these verbs (I want / do you like? etc.):

I'm tired. I want to go home. (not I'm wanting)

'Do you know that girl?' 'Yes, but I don't remember her name.'

I don't understand. What do you mean?
Exercises

8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.

Does he take photographs? Yes, he does.
Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn’t.
What is he doing? He’s having a bath.

Is she driving a bus?
Does she drive a bus?
What is she doing?

Does he clean windows?
Is he cleaning a window?
What is he doing?

Are they teaching?
Do they teach?
What do they do?

Complete the sentences with am/is/are or do/don’t/does/doesn’t.
1 Excuse me, do you speak English?
2 ‘Where’s Kate?’ I don’t know.
3 What’s funny? Why are you laughing?
4 ‘What does your sister do?’ ‘She’s a dentist.’
5 It isn’t raining. I don’t want to go out in the rain.
6 ‘Where do you come from?’ ‘Canada.’
7 How much does it cost to stay at this hotel? Is it expensive?
8 Steve is a good tennis player, but he doesn’t play very often.

8.2 Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or the present simple (I do).
1 Excuse me, do you speak (you/speak) English?
2 ‘Where’s Tom?’ He’s having (he/have) a shower.
3 I don’t watch (I/not/watch) TV very often.
4 Listen! Somebody is singing (sing).
5 Sarah is tired. She wants (she/want) to go home now.
6 How often do you use (you/use) your car? Every day?
7 ‘Excuse me, but are you sitting (you/sit) in my seat?’ ‘Oh, I’m sorry.’
8 I’m sorry, I don’t understand. Can you speak more slowly?
9 It’s late. I’m going (I/go) home now. Will you come with me?
10 What time does your father finish (your father/finish) work every day?
11 You can turn off the radio. I’m not listening (I/not/listen) to it.
12 ‘Where’s Paul?’ ‘In the kitchen. He’s cooking (he/cook) something.’
13 Mark usually walks (usually/walk).
14 Sue prefers coffee. She prefers tea.

→ Additional exercises 8–9 (page 255)
You can say *I have* or *I’ve got*, *he has* or *he’s got*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th><em>have</em></th>
<th><em>have got</em></th>
<th><em>I’ve got</em></th>
<th><em>we’ve got</em></th>
<th><em>you’ve got</em></th>
<th><em>they’ve got</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(I’ve got)</td>
<td>(we’ve got)</td>
<td>(you’ve got)</td>
<td>(they’ve got)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td><em>has</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>(he’s got)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td><em>has</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>(she’s got)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td><em>has</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>(it’s got)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I have blue eyes, or I’ve got blue eyes.

Tom has two sisters, or Tom has got two sisters.

Our car has four doors, or Our car has got four doors.

Sarah isn’t feeling well. She has a headache, or She’s got a headache.

They like animals. They have a horse, three dogs and six cats, or They’ve got a horse...

I don’t have / I haven’t got etc. (negative)

You can say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th><em>don’t</em></th>
<th><em>have</em></th>
<th><em>doesn’t</em></th>
<th><em>hasn’t</em></th>
<th><em>got</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we/they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she</td>
<td><em>doesn’t</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td><em>doesn’t</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I don’t have a car, or I haven’t got a car.

They don’t have any children, or They haven’t got any children.

It’s a nice house, but it doesn’t have a garden, or ... it hasn’t got a garden.

Amy doesn’t have a job at the moment, or Amy hasn’t got a job ...

do you have? / have you got? etc. (questions)

You can say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th><em>do</em></th>
<th><em>have</em></th>
<th><em>does</em></th>
<th><em>has</em></th>
<th><em>got</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we/they</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘Do you have a camera?’ ‘No, I don’t.’ or ‘Have you got a camera?’ ‘No, I haven’t.’

‘Does Helen have a car?’ ‘Yes, she does.’ or ‘Has Helen got a car?’ ‘Yes, she has.’

What kind of car does she have? or ... has she got?

How many children do they have? or ... have they got?
Exercises

9.1 Write these sentences with got. The meaning is the same.
1 They have two children.
2 She doesn't have a key.
3 He has a new job.
4 Do you have an umbrella?
5 We have a lot of work to do.
6 I don't have your phone number.
7 Does your father have a car?
8 How much money do we have?

9.2 Write these sentences with do/does/don’t/doesn’t. The meaning is the same.
1 Have you got any money?
2 I haven't got many clothes.
3 Has Tom got a brother?
4 How many children have they got?
5 Have you got any questions?
6 Sam hasn't got a job.

9.3 Read the questions and answers. Then write sentences about Mark.

1 Have you got a car? No.
2 Have you got a bike? Yes.
3 Have you got a dog?
4 Have you got a mobile phone? Yes.
5 Have you got a watch? No.
6 Have you got any brothers or sisters? Yes, two brothers and a sister.

What about you? Write sentences with I've got or I haven't got.
7 (a dog)
8 (a bike)
9 (brothers/sisters)

9.4 Complete the sentences. Use have, has, don't have or doesn't have.
1 Sarah doesn’t have a car. She goes everywhere by bike.
2 They like animals. They have three dogs and two cats.
3 Charles isn't happy. He has a lot of problems.
4 They are always busy. They have much free time.
5 ‘What's wrong?’ ‘I have something in my eye.’
6 ‘Where's my pen?’ ‘I don’t know. I haven’t got it.’
7 Amy wants to go to the concert, but she hasn’t got a ticket.

9.5 Complete the sentences. Use have/has got or haven’t/hasn’t got with:

- six legs
- a key
- a headache
- a lot of friends
- a job
- much time

1 I’m not feeling very well. I’ve got a headache.
2 Everybody likes Tom. He has six legs.
3 She can’t open the door. She doesn’t have a key.
4 Quick! We have much time.
5 An insect has a lot of friends.
6 I’m unemployed. I haven’t got a job.

→ Additional exercises 5–7 (page 254)
Now Robert **is** at work.

At midnight last night he **wasn’t** at work.

He **was** in bed.

He **was** asleep.

---

**am/is (present) → was (past):**
- I **am** tired. (now)
- Where **is** Kate? (now)
- The weather **is** good today.

**are (present) → were (past):**
- You **are** late. (now)
- They **aren’t** here. (now)

**positive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>was</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>we</th>
<th>were</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>wasn’t</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>we</th>
<th>weren’t</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**question**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I? he?</th>
<th>was?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>she?</td>
<td>wasn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>we?</th>
<th>weren’t</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Last year Rachel **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
- When I **was** a child, I **was** scared of dogs.
- We **were** hungry after the journey, but we **weren’t** tired.
- The hotel **was** comfortable, but it **wasn’t** expensive.
- **Was** the weather nice when you **were** on holiday?
- Your shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
- Why **were** you late this morning?

**Short answers**

- **Yes,** I/he/she/it **was.**
- We/you/they **were.**
- **No,** I/he/she/it **wasn’t.**
- We/you/they **weren’t.**

  - ‘**Were you** late?’ ‘No, I wasn’t.’
  - ‘**Was Tom** at work yesterday?’ ‘Yes, he was.’
  - ‘**Were Sue and Steve** at the party?’ ‘No, they weren’t.’
Exercises

10.1 Where were these people at 3 o’clock yesterday afternoon?

1. Joe was in bed.
2. Jack and Kate
3. Sue
4. And you?

10.2 Write am/is/are (present) or was/were (past).

1. Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
2. Today the weather is nice, but yesterday it was very cold.
3. I am hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4. I feel fine this morning, but I was very tired last night.
5. Where were you at 11 o’clock last Friday morning?
6. Don’t buy those shoes. They are very expensive.
7. I like your new jacket. Is it expensive?
8. This time last year I was in Paris.
9. ‘Where were Sam and Joe?’ ‘I don’t know. They weren’t here a few minutes ago.’

10.3 Write was/were or wasn’t/weren’t.

1. We weren’t happy with the hotel. Our room was very small and it wasn’t clean.
2. Mark was ill. He was ill. He’s better now.
3. Yesterday was a public holiday, so the banks were closed. They’re open today.
4. ‘Was Kate and Ben at the party?’ ‘Kate was there, but Ben wasn’t.’
5. Where are my keys? They were on the table, but they’re not there now.
6. You weren’t at home last night. Where were you?

10.4 Write questions from these words + was/were. Put the words in the right order.

1. (late / you / this morning / why?)
   Why were you late this morning?
2. (difficult / your exam?)
3. (last week / where / Sue and Chris?)
4. (your new camera / how much?)
5. (angry / you / yesterday / why?)
6. (nice / the weather / last week?)
worked/got/went etc. (past simple)

They **watch** TV every evening.
*(present simple)*

They **watched** TV yesterday evening.
*(past simple)*

**watched** is the past simple:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th><strong>watched</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td><strong>watched</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The past simple is often **-ed** (*regular verbs*). For example:

- work → **worked**
- dance → **danced**
- clean → **cleaned**
- stay → **stayed**
- start → **started**
- need → **needed**

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I **cleaned** my teeth.
- Terry **worked** in a bank from 2005 to 2011.
- Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **finished** at midnight.

Spelling (**→ Appendix 5**):

- try → **tried**
- study → **studied**
- copy → **copied**
- stop → **stopped**
- plan → **planned**

Some verbs are **irregular** (*= not regular*). The past simple is **not** **-ed**. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2–3):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>begin → <strong>began</strong></th>
<th>fall → <strong>fell</strong></th>
<th>leave → <strong>left</strong></th>
<th>sell → <strong>sold</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break → <strong>broke</strong></td>
<td>find → <strong>found</strong></td>
<td>lose → <strong>lost</strong></td>
<td>sit → <strong>sat</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring → <strong>brought</strong></td>
<td>fly → <strong>flew</strong></td>
<td>make → <strong>made</strong></td>
<td>sleep → <strong>slept</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build → <strong>built</strong></td>
<td>forget → <strong>forgot</strong></td>
<td>meet → <strong>met</strong></td>
<td>speak → <strong>spoke</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy → <strong>bought</strong></td>
<td>get → <strong>got</strong></td>
<td>pay → <strong>paid</strong></td>
<td>stand → <strong>stood</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch → <strong>caught</strong></td>
<td>give → <strong>gave</strong></td>
<td>put → <strong>put</strong></td>
<td>take → <strong>took</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come → <strong>came</strong></td>
<td>go → <strong>went</strong></td>
<td>read → <strong>read</strong></td>
<td>tell → <strong>told</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do → <strong>did</strong></td>
<td>have → <strong>had</strong></td>
<td>ring → <strong>rang</strong></td>
<td>think → <strong>thought</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink → <strong>drank</strong></td>
<td>hear → <strong>heard</strong></td>
<td>say → <strong>said</strong></td>
<td>win → <strong>won</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat → <strong>ate</strong></td>
<td>know → <strong>knew</strong></td>
<td>see → <strong>saw</strong></td>
<td>write → <strong>wrote</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* pronounced 'red'

- I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9 o'clock.
- We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- Caroline **went** to the cinema three times last week.
- James **came** into the room, **took** off his coat and **sat** down.
Exercises

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box.

- clean - die - enjoy - finish - happen - open - rain - start - stay - want

1 I ........................................ my teeth three times yesterday.
2 It was hot in the room, so I ........................................ the window.
3 The film was very long. It ........................................ at 7.15 and ........................................ at 10 o'clock.
4 When I was a child, I ........................................ to be a doctor.
5 The accident ........................................ last Sunday afternoon.
6 The weather is nice today, but yesterday it ........................................ all day.
7 We ........................................ our holiday last year. We ........................................ at a very nice place.
8 Anna's grandfather ........................................ when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the past simple of these verbs.

1 get ........................................ 4 pay ........................................ 7 go ........................................ 10 know ........................................
2 see ........................................ 5 visit ........................................ 8 think ........................................ 11 put ........................................
3 play ........................................ 6 buy ........................................ 9 copy ........................................ 12 speak ........................................

11.3 Read about Lisa's journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Last Tuesday Lisa (1) ........................................ from London to Madrid. She (2) ........................................ up at 6 o'clock in the morning and (3) ........................................ a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she (4) ........................................ home and (5) ........................................ to the airport. When she (6) ........................................ there, she (7) ........................................ the car, (8) ........................................ to the airport building, and (9) ........................................ in. Then she (10) ........................................ breakfast at a cafe and (11) ........................................ for her flight. The plane (12) ........................................ on time and (13) ........................................ in Madrid two hours later. Finally she (14) ........................................ a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the centre of Madrid.

11.4 Write sentences about the past (yesterday / last week etc.).

1 James always goes to work by car. Yesterday ........................................
2 Rachel often loses her keys. She ........................................ last week.
3 Kate meets her friends every evening. She ........................................ yesterday evening.
4 I buy a newspaper every day. Yesterday ........................................
5 We often go to the cinema at weekends. Last Sunday we ........................................
6 I eat an orange every day. Yesterday ........................................
7 Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning he ........................................
8 Our friends often come to see us. They ........................................ last Friday.

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

1 ........................................
2 ........................................
3 ........................................
I didn’t ... Did you ...?
(past simple negative and questions)

We use *did* in past simple negatives and questions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>I play</td>
<td>I didn’t (didn’t play)</td>
<td>did play?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>start</td>
<td>I start</td>
<td>I didn’t (didn’t start)</td>
<td>did start?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>I watch</td>
<td>I didn’t (didn’t watch)</td>
<td>did watch?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>I have</td>
<td>I didn’t (didn’t have)</td>
<td>did have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>I see</td>
<td>I didn’t (didn’t see)</td>
<td>did see?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>I do</td>
<td>I didn’t (didn’t do)</td>
<td>did do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>I go</td>
<td>I didn’t (didn’t go)</td>
<td>did go?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**do/does (present) → did (past):**

- I don’t watch TV very often.
  
  I didn’t watch TV yesterday.

- Does she often go away?
  
  Did she go away last week?

We use *did/didn’t + infinitive* *(watch/play/go etc.)*:

- I watched but I didn’t watch (not I didn’t watched)
  
  they went did they go? (not did they went?)

- He had he didn’t have
  
  you did did you do?

- I played tennis yesterday, but I didn’t win.

- ‘Did you do the shopping?’ ‘No, I didn’t have time.’

- We went to the cinema, but we didn’t enjoy the film.

**Study the word order in questions:**

\[
\text{did} + \text{subject} + \text{infinitive}
\]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Where</th>
<th>What</th>
<th>How</th>
<th>Did</th>
<th>your sister</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>call</th>
<th>you?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Did</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>the accident</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>happen?</td>
<td>last night?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>did</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>your parents</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>for their holiday?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Short answers**

- Yes, I/we/you/they he/she/it did.

- No, I/we/you/they he/she/it didn’t.

- ‘Did you see Joe yesterday?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’

- ‘Did it rain on Sunday?’ ‘Yes, it did.’

- ‘Did Helen come to the party?’ ‘No, she didn’t.’

- ‘Did your parents have a good holiday?’ ‘Yes, they did.’

---

*worked/got/went etc. (past simple) → Unit 11*
Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.
1. I saw Barbara, but I didn't see Jane.
2. They worked on Monday, but they didn't work on Tuesday.
3. We went to the post office, but we didn't go to the bank.
4. She had a pen, but she didn't have any paper.
5. Jack did French at school, but he didn't do German.

Write questions with Did ... ?
1. I watched TV last night. How about you? Did you watch TV last night?
2. I enjoyed the party. How about you? Did you enjoy the party?
3. I had a good holiday. How about you? Did you have a good holiday?
4. I finished work early. How about you? Did you finish work early?
5. I slept well last night. How about you? Did you sleep well last night?

What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.
1. (watch TV) I watched TV. or I didn't watch TV.
2. (get up before 7 o'clock) I got up before 7 o'clock. or I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.
3. (have a shower) I had a shower. or I didn't have a shower.
4. (buy a magazine) I bought a magazine. or I didn't buy a magazine.
5. (eat meat) I ate meat. or I didn't eat meat.
6. (go to bed before 10.30) I went to bed before 10.30. or I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

Write B's questions. Use:
arrive  cost  go  go to bed late  happen  have a nice time  stay  win

1. A: We went to New York last month. B: Where did you stay?
   A: With some friends.

2. A: I was late for the meeting. B: What time?
   A: Half past nine.

3. A: I played tennis this afternoon. B: ?
   A: No, I lost.

4. A: I had a nice holiday. B: Good. Where?
   A: To the mountains.

5. A: We came home by taxi. B: How much?
   A: Ten pounds.

6. A: I'm tired this morning. B: ?
   A: No, but I didn't sleep very well.

7. A: We went to the beach yesterday. B: ?
   A: Yes, it was great.

8. A: The window is broken. B: How?
   A: I don't know.

Put the verb in the correct form - positive, negative or question.
1. We went to the cinema, but the film wasn't very good. We didn't enjoy it.
2. Tom bought some new clothes yesterday - two shirts, a jacket and a pullover.
3. 'What happened yesterday?' 'No, it was a nice day.'
4. We were tired, so we stayed long at the party.
5. It was very warm in the room, so I opened a window.
6. 'Did you phone Chris this morning?' 'No, I didn't have time.'
7. 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How about that?'
8. 'Why weren't you at the meeting yesterday?' 'I know about it.'
was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I was watching</td>
<td>I wasn’t watching</td>
<td>Was he watching?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He was playing</td>
<td>He wasn’t playing</td>
<td>Was she playing?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It was living</td>
<td>It wasn’t living</td>
<td>Was it living?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We were</td>
<td>We weren’t</td>
<td>Were we?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You were</td>
<td>You weren’t</td>
<td>Were you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They were</td>
<td>They weren’t</td>
<td>Were they?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday? Were you working?
- ‘What did he say?’ ‘I don’t know. I wasn’t listening.’
- It was raining, so we didn’t go out.
- In 2009 we were living in Canada.
- Today she’s wearing a skirt, but yesterday she was wearing trousers.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun was shining and the birds were singing.

Spelling (live → living / run → running / lie → lying etc.) → Appendix 5

am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m working (now).</td>
<td>I was working at 10.30 last night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It isn’t raining (now).</td>
<td>It wasn’t raining when we went out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are you doing (now)?</td>
<td>What were you doing at 3 o’clock?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.1 Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.

Rachel: at home, watch TV
Jack and Kate: at the cinema, watch a film
Tom: in his car, drive
Tracey: at the station, wait for a train
Mr and Mrs Hall: in the park, walk

1 Rachel was at home. She was watching TV.
2 Jack and Kate were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
3 Tom was in his car. He was driving.
4 Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the park. They were walking.
6 And you? I was at home, too. I was reading a book.

13.2 Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 At 8.45 she was washing her car.
2 At 10.45 she was having breakfast.
3 At 8 o'clock she was reading a newspaper.
4 At 12.10 she was sitting on the sofa.
5 At 7.15 she was making coffee.
6 At 9.30 she was cooking dinner.

13.3 Complete the questions. Use was/were -ing. Use what/where/why if necessary.

1 (you/live) Where were you living in 2012?
2 (you/do) What were you doing at 2 o'clock?
3 (it/rain) Why were you late? When you got up, it was raining.
4 (Sue/drive) Where was Sue going? She was driving so fast.
5 (Tom/wear) Why did Tom wear a suit yesterday?
6 (in/London) Where were you when you got up? In London.

13.4 Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.

Hi. I'm going shopping.

1 (wear / a jacket) He wasn't wearing a jacket.
2 (carry / a bag) He wasn't carrying a bag.
3 (go / to the dentist) He wasn't going to the dentist.
4 (eat / an ice cream) He wasn't eating an ice cream.
5 (carry / an umbrella) He wasn't carrying an umbrella.
6 (go / home) He wasn't going home.
7 (wear / a hat) He wasn't wearing a hat.
8 (ride / a bicycle) He wasn't riding a bicycle.
His phone rang.

What happened? His phone rang. (past simple)
What was Jack doing when his phone rang? He was reading a book.

What did he do when his phone rang? He stopped reading and answered his phone. (past simple)

Jack began reading before his phone rang. So when his phone rang, he was reading.

Jack was reading a book. His phone rang. He stopped reading. He answered his phone.

past simple
- A: What did you do yesterday morning?
  B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11.30)
- Did you watch the game on TV last night?
- It didn't rain while we were on holiday.

past continuous
- A: What were you doing at 10.30?
  B: We were playing tennis.
- It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining before we went out)
- I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
- Kelly fell asleep while she was reading.

I did (past simple) → Units 11–12  I was doing (past continuous) → Unit 13  while → Unit 105
Exercises

14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

1. Lucy _broke_ (break) her arm last week. It _happened_ (happen) when she _painted_ (paint) her room. She _fell_ (fall) off the ladder.

2. The train _arrived_ (arrive) at the station and Paula _got_ (get) off. Two friends of hers, Jon and Rachel, _waited_ (wait) to meet her.

3. Yesterday Sue _walked_ (walk) along the road when she _met_ (meet) James. He _went_ (go) to the station to catch a train and he _carried_ (carry) a bag. They _stopped_ (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

14.2 Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

1. A: What was the weather like when you _got_ (get) up this morning?
   B: It _was raining_ (rain).

2. A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?
   B: Yes, she _studied_ (study).

3. A: _Paul called_ (call) you this morning?
   B: Yes, he _called_ (call) while I _had_ (have) breakfast.

4. A: Was Tracey at work today?
   B: No, she _did not go_ (not/go) to work. She was ill.

5. A: How fast _you drove_ (drive) when the police _stopped_ (stop) you?
   B: I'm not sure, but I _did not drive_ (not/drive) very fast.

6. A: _Your team won_ (win) the football match yesterday?
   B: The weather was very bad, so we _did not play_ (not/play).

7. A: How _you broke_ (break) the window?
   B: We _played_ (play) football. I _kicked_ (kick) the ball and it _hit_ (hit) the window.

8. A: _You saw_ (see) Jessica last night?
   B: Yes, she _wore_ (wear) a very nice jacket.

9. A: What _you did_ (do) at 2 o'clock this morning?
   B: I was asleep.

10. A: I _lost_ (lose) my key last night.
    B: How _you got_ (you get) into your room?
    A: I _climbed_ (climb) in through a window.

Additional exercises 14–15 (pages 257–58)
I have done (present perfect 1)

His shoes are dirty.

He is cleaning his shoes.

He has cleaned his shoes. (= his shoes are clean now)

They are at home.

They are going out.

They have gone out. (= they are not at home now)

has cleaned / have gone etc. is the present perfect (have + past participle):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I</th>
<th>we/you</th>
<th>they</th>
<th>he/she/it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have ('ve)</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have not (haven't)</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleaned</td>
<td>finished</td>
<td>started</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>started</td>
<td>finished</td>
<td>started</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finished?</td>
<td>started?</td>
<td>lost?</td>
<td>done?</td>
<td>been? gone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>started?</td>
<td>finished?</td>
<td>lost?</td>
<td>done?</td>
<td>been? gone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lost?</td>
<td>done?</td>
<td>been?</td>
<td>gone?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>done?</td>
<td>been?</td>
<td>gone?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regular verbs

The past participle is -ed (the same as the past simple):

- clean → I have cleaned
- finish → we have finished
- start → she has started

Irregular verbs

The past participle is not -ed.

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same:

- buy → I bought / I have bought
- have → he had / he has had

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different:

- break → I broke / I have broken
- see → you saw / you have seen
- fall → it fell / it has fallen
- go → they went / they have gone

We use the present perfect for an action in the past with a result now:

- I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)
- 'Where's Rebecca?' ‘She's gone to bed.’ (= she is in bed now)
- We've bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
- It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present. (= I don't have a present for her now)
- 'Bob is away on holiday.' ‘Oh, where has he gone?’ (= where is he now?)
- Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it? (= do you need it now?)
15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from the box.

Choose from the box:
go to bed  clean his shoes  stop raining
close the door  fall down  have a shower

1. before  

2. now  

3. 

4. 

5. 

6. 

Exercises

15.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box.

Choose from the box:
break  buy  decide  finish  forget  go  go
invite  lose  see  not/see  take  tell  not/tell

1. I ... my keys. I don't know where they are.
2. I ... some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
3. 'Where is Helen?' 'She's not here. She ... out.'
4. I'm looking for Paula. ... you ... her?
5. Look! Somebody ... that window.
6. 'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I ... her.'
7. I can't find my umbrella. Somebody ... it.
8. 'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I ... them.'
9. I'm looking for Sarah. Where ... she ... ?
10. I know that woman, but I ... her name.
11. Sue is having a party tonight. She ... a lot of people.
12. What are you going to do? ... you ... ?
13. A: Does Ben know about the meeting tomorrow?  
   B: I don't think so. I ... him.
14. I ... with this magazine. Do you want it?
I’ve just ...
just = a short time ago
- A: Are Laura and Paul here?
  B: Yes, they’ve just arrived.
- A: Are you hungry?
  B: No, I’ve just had dinner.
- A: Is Tom here?
  B: No, I’m afraid he’s just gone.
  (= he has just gone)

I’ve already ...
already = before you expected / before I expected
- A: What time are Laura and Paul coming?
  B: They’ve already arrived.
  (= before you expected)
- It’s only 9 o’clock and Anna has already gone to bed. (= before I expected)
- A: Jon, this is Emma.
  B: Yes, I know. We’ve already met.

I haven’t ... yet / Have you ... yet?
yet = until now
We use yet in negative sentences and questions. Yet is usually at the end.

yet in negative sentences (I haven’t ... yet)
- A: Are Laura and Paul here?
  B: No, they haven’t arrived yet.
  (= but B expects Laura and Paul to arrive soon)
- A: Does James know that you’re going away?
  B: No, I haven’t told him yet.
  (= but B is going to tell him soon)
- Silvia has bought a new dress, but she hasn’t worn it yet.

yet in questions (Have you ... yet?)
- A: Have Laura and Paul arrived yet?
  B: No, not yet. We’re still waiting for them.
- A: Has Nicola started her new job yet?
  B: No, she starts next week.
- A: This is my new dress.
  B: Oh, it’s nice. Have you worn it yet?
Exercises

1. Write a sentence with just for each picture.

   1. They've just arrived.
   2. He ... ..... just ......
   3. They ...
   4. The race ...

2. Complete the sentences. Use already + present perfect.

   1. What time is Paul arriving? He's already arrived.
   2. Do your friends want to see the film? No, they haven't seen it yet.
   3. Don't forget to phone Tom. I haven't called him yet.
   4. When is Mark going away? He hasn't left yet.
   5. Do you want to read the newspaper? I haven't read it yet.
   6. When does Sarah start her new job? She hasn't started it yet.

3. Write a sentence with just (They've just ... / She's just... etc.) or a negative sentence with yet (They haven't ... yet / She hasn't ... yet etc.).

   1. a few minutes ago (she / go / out) She hasn't gone out yet.
   2. a few minutes ago (the bus / go) The bus hasn't left yet.
   3. a few minutes ago (the train / leave) The train hasn't left yet.
   4. a few minutes ago (he / open / it) He hasn't opened it yet.
   5. a few minutes ago (they / finish / their dinner) They haven't finished their dinner yet.
   6. a few minutes ago (it / stop / raining) It hasn't stopped raining yet.

4. Write questions with yet.

   1. Your friend has a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her:
      Have you started your new job yet? ...
   2. Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him:
      Have you met your new neighbours yet? ...
   3. Your friend has to pay her electricity bill. Perhaps she has paid it. You ask her:
      Have you paid your electricity bill yet? ...
   4. Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it. You ask a friend about Tom:
      Have you heard from Tom? He hasn't sold his car yet.
Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)

We use the present perfect (have been / have had / have played etc.) when we talk about a time from the past until now – for example, a person's life:

Have you ever been to Japan?

- past
- time from the past until now
- now

- 'Have you been to France?' 'No, I haven't.'
- I've been to Canada, but I haven't been to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.
- I've seen that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- 'Have you read this book?' 'Yes, I've read it twice.' (twice = two times)

Present perfect + ever (in questions) and never:

- 'Has Ann ever been to Australia?' 'Yes, once.' (once = one time)
- 'Have you ever played golf?' 'Yes, I play a lot.'
- My sister has never travelled by plane.
- I've never ridden a horse.
- 'Who is that man?' 'I don't know. I've never seen him before.'

Gone and been

| Ben has gone to Spain. (= he is in Spain now) |
| Ben has been to Spain. (= he went to Spain, but now he is back) |

Compare:

- I can't find Susan. Where has she gone? (= where is she now?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where have you been?
Exercises

17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning Have you ever ...? Write the questions.

1 (be / London?)
2 (play / golf?)
3 (be / Australia?)
4 (lose / your passport?)
5 (fly / in a helicopter?)
6 (win / a race?)
7 (be / New York?)
8 (drive / a bus?)
9 (break / your leg?)

Have you ever been to London?
Have you ever played golf?

Have

1 (be / London?)
2 (play / golf?)
3 (be / Australia?)
4 (lose / your passport?)
5 (fly / in a helicopter?)
6 (win / a race?)
7 (be / New York?)
8 (drive / a bus?)
9 (break / your leg?)

Helen

Have you ever been to London?
No, never.
Yes, many times.
Yes, once.
No, never.
Yes, a few times.
No, never.
Yes, twice.
No, never.
Yes, once.

17.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.)

1 (be / New York) She's been to New York twice.
2 (be / Australia) She
3 (win / a race) She
4 (fly / in a helicopter) She

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5 (be / New York) I
6 (play / tennis) I
7 (drive / a lorry) I
8 (be / late for work or school) I

17.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

Mary

1 She has had many different jobs.
2 She
3
4
5
6

17.4 Write gone or been.

1 Ben is on holiday at the moment. He's gone to Spain.
2 'Have you ever gone to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
3 My parents aren't at home at the moment. They've been out.
4 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you been to it?
5 Rebecca loves Paris. She's been there many times.
6 Helen was here earlier, but I think she's been home now.
7 'Where's Jessica?' 'She's not in the office. I think she's been home.'
8 Hello, Sue. I was looking for you. Where have you been?

Additional exercises 16, 18 (pages 258–60)
Helen is on holiday in Ireland. She is there now. She arrived in Ireland on Monday. Today is Thursday.

How long has she been in Ireland?
She *has been* in Ireland since Monday, for three days.

Compare *is* and *has been*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Simple</th>
<th>Present Perfect Simple (have been / have lived / have known etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dan and Kate are married.</td>
<td>They <em>have been</em> married for five years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
<th>Present Perfect Continuous (have been + -ing)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m learning German.</td>
<td>How long have you <em>been learning</em> German?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare:

**Present Simple**

- Dan and Kate are married.
- Are you married?
- Do you know Lisa?
- I know Lisa.
- Vicky lives in London.
- I have a car.

**Present Perfect Simple**

- They have been married for five years.
- How long have you been married?
- How long have you known her?
- I’ve known her for a long time.
- How long has she lived in London?
- She has lived there all her life.
- How long have you had your car?
- I’ve had it since April.

**Present Continuous**

- I’m learning German.
- David is watching TV.
- It’s raining.

**Present Perfect Continuous**

- How long have you been learning German?
- How long has he been watching TV?
- It’s been raining all day.
Exercises

18.1 Complete these sentences.
1 Helen is in Ireland. She has been in Ireland since Monday.
2 I know Lisa. I have known her for a long time.
3 Sarah and Andy are married. They have been married since 2005.
4 Ben is ill. He has been ill for the last few days.
5 We live in Scott Road. We have been there for a long time.
6 Catherine works in a bank. She has worked there for five years.
7 Alan has a headache. He has had a headache since he got up this morning.
8 I'm learning English. I have been learning English for six months.

18.2 Make questions with How long ...

1 Helen is on holiday. How long has she been on holiday?
2 Steve and Nadia are in Brazil. How long have they been in Brazil?
3 I know Amy. How long have you known her?
4 Emily is learning Italian. How long have you been learning Italian?
5 My brother lives in Canada. How long has he been living in Canada?
6 I'm a teacher. How long have you been a teacher?
7 It is raining. How long has it been raining?

18.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for ten minutes</th>
<th>for ten years</th>
<th>all day</th>
<th>all her life</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>since he was 20</td>
<td>since Sunday</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 They have been married for ten years.
2 She has lived in Wales.
3 They are on holiday.
4 The sun is shining.
5 She has had a beard.
6 He has been waiting.

18.4 Which is right?

1 Mark lives / has lived in Canada since April. (has lived is right)
2 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her very well.
3 Jane and I are friends. I know / I've known her for a long time.
4 A: Sorry I'm late. How long are you waiting/ have you been waiting?
   B: Not long. Only five minutes.
5 Luke works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
6 Ruth is reading a newspaper. She is reading / She has been reading it for two hours.
7 'How long do you live / have you lived in this house?' 'About ten years.'
8 'Is that a new coat?' 'No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time.'
9 Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / He has been there for the last three days.
for and since

We use for and since to say how long:

- Helen is in Ireland. She has been there since Monday.

We use for + a period of time (three days / two years etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for three days</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuesday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wednesday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

We use since + the start of the period (Monday / 9 o'clock etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>since Monday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Richard has been in Canada for six months. (not since six months)
- We’ve been waiting for two hours. (not since two hours)
- I’ve lived in London for a long time.

ago

ago = before now:

- Susan started her new job three weeks ago. (= three weeks before now)
- ’When did Tom go out?’  ‘Ten minutes ago.’ (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner an hour ago.
- Life was very different a hundred years ago.

We use ago with the past (started/did/had/was etc.).

Compare ago and for:

- When did Helen arrive in Ireland?  
  She arrived in Ireland three days ago.

- How long has she been in Ireland?  
  She has been in Ireland for three days.
Write for or since.
1 Helen has been in Ireland since Monday.
2 Helen has been in Ireland for three days.
3 My aunt has lived in Australia for 15 years.
4 Tina is in her office. She has been there since 7 o'clock.
5 India has been an independent country since 1947.
6 The bus is late. We've been waiting for 20 minutes.
7 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty for many years.
8 Michael has been ill for a long time. He has been in hospital since October.

Answer these questions. Use ago.
1 When was your last meal? Three hours ago.
2 When was the last time you were ill?
3 When did you last go to the cinema?
4 When was the last time you were in a car?
5 When was the last time you went on holiday?

Complete the sentences. Use for or ago with these words.
1 Helen arrived in Ireland three days ago.
2 Helen has been in Ireland for three days.
3 Lynn and Mark have been married for 20 years.
4 Lynn and Mark got married for 20 years.
5 Dan arrived an hour ago.
6 I bought these shoes a few days ago.
7 Silvia has been learning English for six months.
8 Have you known Lisa for a long time?

Complete the sentences with for or since.
1 (Helen is in Ireland – she arrived there three days ago)
   Helen has been in Ireland for three days.
2 (Jack is here – he arrived on Tuesday)
   Jack has
3 (It's raining – it started an hour ago)
   It's been
4 (I know Sue – I first met her in 2008)
   I've
5 (Claire and Matt are married – they got married six months ago)
   Claire and Matt have
6 (Laura is studying medicine at university – she started three years ago)
   Laura has
7 (David plays the piano – he started when he was seven years old)
   David has

Write sentences about yourself. Begin your sentences with:
I've lived ... I've been ... I've been learning ... I've known ... I've had ...
1 I've lived in this town for three years.
2
3
4
5

Additional exercises 16–18 (pages 258–60)
### I have done (present perfect) and I did (past)

With a finished time (**yesterday** / **last week** etc.), we use the past (**arrived**/**saw**/**was** etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past</th>
<th>finished time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>We arrived</strong></td>
<td>yesterday. last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at 3 o'clock. in 2002.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>six months ago.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do *not* use the present perfect (**have arrived**/**have done**/**have been** etc.) with a finished time:

- **I saw** Paula **yesterday**.
  *(not I have seen)*

- Where **were** you **on Sunday afternoon**?
  *(not Where have you been)*

- We **didn't have** a holiday **last year**.
  *(not We haven't had)*

- 'What **did** you **do last night**?'  'I stayed at home.'

- William Shakespeare **lived from 1564 to 1616**. He **was** a writer. He **wrote** many plays and poems.

Use the past to ask **When ... ?** or **What time ... ?**:

- **When did** you **buy** your computer?  *(not When have you bought)*

- **What time did** Andy **go out**?  *(not What time has Andy gone out)*

#### Compare:

**Present perfect**

- **I have lost** my key.
  *(= I can't find it now)*

- Ben **has gone** home.
  *(= he isn't here now)*

- **Have you seen** Kate?
  *(= where is she now?)*

**Past**

- **I lost** my key **last week**

- Ben **went** home **ten minutes ago**.

- **Did you see** Kate **on Saturday**?

- **Did you go** to Spain **last year**?

- Shakespeare **wrote** many plays and poems.

- Sam **didn't phone** me yesterday.

- **We've lived** in Singapore for six years.
  *(= we live there now)*

- We **lived** in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.
Exercises

20.1 Complete the answers to the questions.

1. Have you seen Kate?
   Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
2. Have you started your new job?
   Yes, I started it last week.
3. Have your friends arrived?
   Yes, they arrived at 5 o'clock.
4. Has Sarah gone away?
   Yes, she went away on Friday.
5. Have you worn your new suit?
   Yes, I wore it yesterday.

20.2 Are these sentences OK? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

1. I've lost my key. I can't find it.
   OK
2. Have you seen Kate yesterday?
   Did you see
3. I've finished my work at 2 o'clock.
   I finished my work.
4. I'm ready now. I've finished my work.
5. What time have you finished your work?
6. Sue isn't here. She's gone out.
7. Steve's grandmother has died two years ago.
8. Where have you been last night?
   OK

20.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. My friend is a writer. He has written many books.
2. We didn't have a holiday last year.
3. I played tennis yesterday afternoon.
4. What time did you go to bed last night?
5. Did you ever meet a famous person?
6. The weather wasn't very good yesterday.
7. Kathy travels a lot. She has visited many countries.
8. I switched off the light before going out this morning.
9. I live in New York now, but I have lived in Mexico for many years.
10. 'What's Canada like? Is it beautiful?' 'I don't know. I haven't been there.'

20.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or past.

1. A: Have you ever been to Florida?
   B: Yes, we went there on holiday two years ago.
   A: Did you have a good time?
   B: Yes, it was great.

2. A: Where's Alan? Did you see him?
   B: Yes, he went out a few minutes ago.
   A: And Rachel?
   B: I don't know. Did you see her?

3. Rose works in a factory. She has worked there for six months.
   Before that she worked as a waitress in a restaurant. She
   (not/enjoy) it very much.

4. A: Do you know Mark's sister?
   B: I have seen her a few times, but I never spoke to her.
   A: Yes, I met her at a party last week. She's very nice.

Additional exercises 19-23, 29-31 (pages 260-62, 265-67)
The office is cleaned every day.
The office was cleaned yesterday.

Compare active and passive:

Somebody cleans the office every day. (active)

The office is cleaned every day. (passive)

Somebody cleaned the office yesterday. (active)

The office was cleaned yesterday. (passive)

The passive is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present simple</th>
<th>past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am/is/are</td>
<td>was/were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(not)</td>
<td>(not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cleaned</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invented</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injured</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The past participle of regular verbs is -ed (cleaned/damaged etc.). For a list of irregular past participles (done/built/taken etc.), see Appendix 2–3.

- Butter is made from milk.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.
- How often are these rooms cleaned?
- I am never invited to parties.
- This house was built 100 years ago.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- When was the telephone invented?
- We weren’t invited to the party last week.
- ‘Was anybody injured in the accident?’ ‘Yes, two people were taken to hospital.’

was/were born

- I was born in Berlin in 1993. (not I am born)
- ‘Where were you born?’ ‘In Cairo.’

passive + by ...

- The telephone was invented by Alexander Bell in 1876. (= Alexander Bell invented it)
- I was bitten by a dog a few days ago.
- Do you like these paintings? They were painted by a friend of mine.
21.1 Write sentences from these words. Some of the sentences are questions.
Sentences 1–7 are present.
1 (the office / clean / every day) ..................................
The office is cleaned every day.
2 (how often / these rooms / clean?) .......................... How often are these rooms cleaned?
3 (glass / make / from sand) Glass
4 (the windows / clean / every two weeks) The windows are cleaned every two weeks.
5 (this room / not / use / very much) The room is not used very much.
6 (we / allow / to park here?) We do not allow parking here.
7 (how / this word / pronounce?) This word is pronounced

Sentences 8–15 are past.
8 (the office / clean / yesterday) .................................. The office was cleaned yesterday.
9 (the house / paint / last month) The house was painted last month.
10 (my phone / steal / a few days ago) My phone was stolen a few days ago.
11 (three people / injure / in the accident) Three people were injured in the accident.
12 (when / this bridge / build?) When was the bridge built?
13 (I / not / wake up / by the noise) I was not woken up by the noise.
14 (how / these windows / break?) How did these windows break?
15 (you / invite / to Jon's party last week?) You were invited to Jon's party last week.

21.2 These sentences are not correct. Correct them.
1 This house built 100 years ago. This house was built 100 years ago.
2 Football plays in most countries of the world. Football is played in most countries of the world.
3 Why did the letter send to the wrong address? Why was the letter sent to the wrong address?
4 A film studio is a place where films make. A film studio is a place where films are made.
5 Where are you born? Where were you born?
6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland? How many languages are spoken in Switzerland?
7 Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen. Somebody broke into our house, but nothing was stolen.
8 When was invented the bicycle? When was the bicycle invented?

21.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:
clean damage find give invite make make show steal take

1 The room __is cleaned__ every day.
2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people __were taken__ to hospital.
3 Paper __is made__ from wood.
4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms __were damaged__.
5 ‘Where did you get this picture?’ ‘It __was given__ to me by a friend of mine.’
6 Many American programmes __are shown__ on British TV.
7 ‘Did James and Sue go to the wedding?’ ‘No. They __weren't invited__, but they didn't go.’
8 ‘How old is this film?’ ‘It __was made__ in 1985.’
9 My car __was stolen__ last week, but the next day it __was taken__ by the police.

21.4 Where were they born?
1 (Ian / Edinburgh) Ian was born in Edinburgh.
2 (Sarah / Manchester) Sarah
3 (her parents / Ireland) Her parents were born in Ireland.
4 (you / ???) I
5 (your mother / ???) Your mother was born...
is being done  has been done (passive 2)

is/are being ... (present continuous passive)

Somebody is painting the door. (active)

The door is being painted. (passive)

My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
Some new houses are being built opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the present continuous and present simple:
The office is being cleaned at the moment. (continuous)
The office is cleaned every day. (simple)
Football matches are often played at the weekend, but no matches are being played next weekend.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 25.

has/have been ... (present perfect passive)

before  now

Somebody has painted the door. (active)
The door has been painted. (passive)

My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)
My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)
I'm not going to the party. I haven't been invited. (= nobody has invited me)
Has this shirt been washed? (= has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:
The room isn't dirty any more. It has been cleaned. (present perfect)
The room was cleaned yesterday. (past simple)
I can't find my keys. I think they've been stolen. (present perfect)
My keys were stolen last week. (past simple)

For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.
Exercises

22.1 What’s happening?

1. The car ___is being repaired___.
2. A bridge ...................................................
3. The windows ...........................................
4. The grass ..............................................

22.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).

1. (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.
2. (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.
3. (the window / break) The window ..............................................
4. (the roof / repair) The roof ..............................................
5. (the car / damage) ..............................................
6. (the houses / knock / down) ..............................................
7. (the trees / cut / down) ..............................................
8. (they / invite / to a party) ..............................................

22.3 Complete the sentences. (Study Unit 21 before you do this exercise.)

1. I can’t use my office at the moment. It ___is being painted___ (paint).
2. We didn’t go to the party. We ___weren’t invited___ (not/invite).
3. The washing machine was broken, but it’s OK now. It ___is being repaired___ (repair) yesterday afternoon.
4. A factory is a place where things ___are being made___ (make).
5. How old are these houses? When ___were they built___ (they/build)?
6. A: ___Is the photocopyer in use___ at the moment?
   B: No, you can go ahead and use it.
7. I’ve never seen these flowers before. What ___are they called___ (they/call)?
8. My sunglasses ___were stolen___ at the beach yesterday.
9. The bridge is closed at the moment. It ___has been damaged___ (damage) last week and it ___is being repaired___ (not/repair) yet.

→ Additional exercises 24–27 (pages 263–64)
be/have/do in present and past tenses

be (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working etc.)

am/is/are + -ing (present continuous)
→ Units 3–4 and 25

was/were + -ing (past continuous)
→ Unit 13

be + past participle (cleaned/made/eaten etc.)

am/is/are + past participle (passive present simple)
→ Unit 21

was/were + past participle (passive past simple)
→ Unit 21

have/has + past participle (cleaned/lost/eaten/been etc.)

have/has + past participle (present perfect)
→ Units 15–18

do/does/did + infinitive (clean/like/eat/go etc.)

do/does + infinitive (present simple negative and questions)
→ Units 6–7

did + infinitive (past simple negative and questions)
→ Unit 12

I'm never invited to parties.
Butter is made from milk.
These offices aren't cleaned every day.
The office was cleaned yesterday.
These houses were built 100 years ago.
How was the window broken?
Where were you born?

I've cleaned my room.
Tom has lost his passport.
Kate hasn't been to Canada.
Where have Paul and Emma gone?

I like coffee, but I don't like tea.
Chris doesn't go out very often.
What do you usually do at weekends?
Does Sam live alone?

I didn't watch TV yesterday.
It didn't rain last week.
What time did Paul and Emma go out?
Exercises

23.1 Write is/are or do/does.
1 Do you work in the evenings?
2 Where are they going?
3 Why are you looking at me?
4 Ben live near you?
5 you like cooking?
6 the sun shining?
7 What time the shops close?
8 Maria working today?
9 What this word mean?
10 you feeling all right?

23.2 Write am not/isn't/aren't or don't/doesn't. All these sentences are negative.
1 Tom doesn't work at weekends.
2 I'm very tired. I want to go out this evening.
3 I'm going out this evening.
4 Gary working this week. He's on holiday.
5 My parents are usually at home. They go out very often.
6 Nicola has travelled a lot, but she speak any foreign languages.
7 You can turn off the television. I watching it.
8 Lisa has invited us to her party next week, but we going.

23.3 Write was/were/did/have/has.
1 Where your shoes made?
2 you go out last night?
3 you doing at 10.30?
4 your mother born?
5 Laura gone home?
6 What time she go?
7 When these houses built?
8 Steve arrived yet?
9 Why you go home early?
10 How long they been married?

23.4 Write is/are/was/were/have/has.
1 Joe has lost his passport.
2 This bridge built ten years ago.
3 you finished your work yet?
4 This town is always clean. The streets cleaned every day.
5 Where you born?
6 I just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7 Glass made from sand.
8 This is a very old photograph. It taken a long time ago.
9 David bought a new car.

23.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

damage -rain- enjoy go -pronounce eat
listen use open go understand

1 I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's raining.
2 Why are you so tired? Did you go to bed late last night?
3 Where are the chocolates? Have you them all?
4 How is your new job? Are you it?
5 My car was badly in the accident, but I was OK.
6 Kate has got a car, but she doesn't it very often.
7 Lisa isn't at home. She has away for a few days.
8 I don't the problem. Can you explain it again?
9 Mark is in his room. He's to music.
10 I don't know how to say this word. How is it?
11 How do you this window? Can you show me?
Regular verbs

The past simple and past participle of regular verbs is -ed:

- clean → cleaned
- live → lived
- paint → painted
- study → studied

Past simple (→ Unit 11)

- I cleaned my room yesterday.
- Chris studied engineering at university.

Past participle

have/has + past participle (present perfect → Units 15–18):

- I have cleaned my room.
- Tina has lived in London for ten years.

be (is/are/were/has been etc.) + past participle (passive → Units 21–22):

- These rooms are cleaned every day.
- My car has been repaired.

Irregular verbs

The past simple and past participle of irregular verbs do not end in -ed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are the same. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I made a cake yesterday. (past simple)
- I have made some coffee. (past participle – present perfect)
- Butter is made from milk. (past participle – passive present)

Sometimes the past simple and past participle are different. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Somebody broke this window last night. (past simple)
- Somebody has broken this window. (past participle – present perfect)
- This window was broken last night. (past participle – passive past)
Exercises

24.1 Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1. make  
   made

2. cut  
   cut

3. get  
   get

4. bring  
   bring

5. pay  
   pay

6. enjoy  
   enjoyed

7. buy  
   bought

8. sit  
   sat

9. leave  
   left

10. happen  
    happened

11. hear  
    heard

12. put  
    put

13. catch  
    caught

14. watch  
    watched

15. understand  
    understood

24.2 Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

1. break  
   broke

2. begin  
   began

3. eat  
   ate

4. drink  
   drank

5. drive  
   drove

6. speak  
   spoke

7. write  
   wrote

8. come  
   came

9. know  
   knew

10. take  
    taken

11. go  
    gone

12. give  
    given

13. throw  
    thrown

14. forget  
    forgotten

24.3 Put the verb in the right form.

1. I ______ my hands because they were dirty. (wash)

2. Somebody has ______ this window. (break)

3. I feel good. I ______ very well last night. (sleep)

4. We ______ a really good film yesterday. (see)

5. It ______ a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)

6. I've ______ my bag. Have you ______ it? (lose / see)

7. Rosa's bicycle was ______ last week. (steal)

8. I ______ to bed early because I was tired. (go)

9. Have you ______ your work yet? (finish)

10. The shopping centre was ______ about 20 years ago. (build)

11. Anna ______ to drive when she was 18. (learn)

12. I've never ______ a horse. (ride)

13. Jessica is a good friend of mine. I've ______ her for a long time. (know)

14. Yesterday I ______ and ______ my leg. (fall / hurt)

15. My brother ______ in the London Marathon last year. Have you ever ______ in a marathon? (run)

24.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb into the correct form.

- cost  
- drive  
- fly  
- make  
- meet  
- sell  
- speak  
- swim  
- tell  
- think  
- wake up  
- win

1. I have ______ some coffee. Would you like some?

2. Have you ______ John about your new job?

3. We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well, but we ______ the game.

4. I know Gary, but I've never ______ his wife.

5. We were ______ by loud music in the middle of the night.

6. Stephanie jumped into the river and ______ to the other side.

7. 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I ______ it was very good.'

8. Many different languages are ______ in the Philippines.

9. Our holiday ______ a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.

10. Have you ever ______ a very fast car?

11. All the tickets for the concert were ______ very quickly.

12. A bird ______ in through the open window while we were having our dinner.
What are you doing tomorrow?

We use *am/is/are + -ing* (present continuous) for something happening now:

- ‘Where are Tina and Helen?’ ‘They’re playing tennis in the park.’
- Please be quiet. I’m working.

We also use *am/is/are + -ing* for the future (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Andrew is playing tennis tomorrow.
- I’m not working next week.

**I am doing something tomorrow** = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it:

- Sophie is going to the dentist on Friday.
- We’re having a party next weekend.
- Are you meeting your friends tonight?
- What are you doing tomorrow evening?
- I’m not going out tonight. I’m staying at home.

You can also say ‘I’m going to do something’ (→ Unit 26).

We use the present continuous (*I’m staying / are you coming* etc.) to say what somebody has arranged to do:

- I’m staying at home this evening. (not I stay)
- Are you going out tonight? (not Do you go)
- Lisa isn’t coming to the party next week. (not Lisa doesn’t come)

But we use the present simple (*start, arrives* etc.) for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc.:

- The train arrives at 7.30.
- What time does the film finish?

**Compare:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present continuous (usually for people)</th>
<th>Present simple (for timetables, programmes etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I’m going to a concert tomorrow.</td>
<td>The concert starts at 7.30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What time are you leaving?</td>
<td>What time does your train leave?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

present continuous → Units 3–4 present simple → Units 5–7 I’m going to ... → Unit 26
Exercises

25.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?

1. Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
2. Richard is going to the cinema.
3. Rachel is... (fill in)
4. lunch with Will.
5. (fill in)

25.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1. (you / go / out / tonight?)
2. (you / work / next week?)
3. (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?)
4. (what time / your friends / come?)
5. (when / Lisa / go / on holiday?)

25.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1. I'm staying at home tonight.
2. I'm going to the theatre on Monday.
3. (fill in)
4. (fill in)
5. (fill in)
6. (fill in)

25.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (he is leaving etc.) or present simple (the train leaves etc.).

1. ‘Are you going... (you/go) out tonight?’ ‘No, I'm too tired.’
2. We're going... (we/go) to a concert tonight. It starts... (it/start) at 7.30.
3. Do you know about Sarah? She's getting... (she/get) married next month!
4. A: My parents are going... (go) on holiday next week. B: Oh, that's nice. Where are they going... (they/go)?
5. Silvia is doing an English course at the moment. The course finishes... (finish) on Friday.
6. There's a party tomorrow night, but I'm not going... (I/not/go).
7. I'm going... (I/go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too?
8. A: How are you getting... (you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi?
   B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus leaves... (leave) at midnight.
9. A: Are you coming... (you/come) with us to the cinema tonight?
   B: Yes, what time is the film... (the film / begin)?
10. A: What are you doing... (you/do) tomorrow afternoon?
    B: I'm working... (I/work).
I'm going to do something

I'm going to watch TV this evening.

She is going to watch TV this evening.

We use **am/is/are going to** ... for the future:

```
  I  am       am       am
  he/she/it is       (not) going to do ...
  we/you/they are       drink ...
                        watch ...
                        buy ... ?
                        eat ... ?
                        wear ... ?
```

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

```
I decided to do it ------------------►
I'm going to do it

past                   now                   future
```

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the wedding next week?
- 'Your hands are dirty.' ‘Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them.’
- Are you going to invite Mark to your party?

We also use the present continuous (I am doing) for the future, usually for arrangements (→ Unit 25):

- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

Something is going to happen

Something is going to happen = we can see now that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain.
  (black clouds now → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready. I'm going to be late.
  (9 o'clock now and not ready → late)
Exercises

26.1 What are these people saying?

26.2 Complete the sentences. Use going to + these verbs:

do eat give lie down stay walk wash watch wear

1. My hands are dirty. **I'm going to wash** them.
2. What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
3. It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I **stay** with some friends.
4. Steve is going to London next week. He **go** with some friends.
5. I'm hungry. I **eat** this sandwich.
6. It's Sarah's birthday next week. We **buy** her a present.
7. Sue says she's feeling very tired. She **lie down** for an hour.
8. Your favourite programme is on TV tonight. **Watch** it?
9. What **are you going to** when she leaves school?

26.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?

1. **It's going to rain.**
2. The shelf
3. The car
4. He

26.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1. I'm
2.
3.
Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8.30 until 4.30.
It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah is at work.
At 11 o'clock yesterday, she was at work.
At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she will be at work.

**will + infinitive** (will be / will win / will come etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>will ('ll)</th>
<th>will not (won't)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>be?</td>
<td>win?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eat?</td>
<td>come? etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

'll = will: I'll (I will) / you'll / she'll etc.
won't = will not: I won't (= I will not) / you won't / she won't etc.

We use **will** for the future (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'll be in Rome. Next week she'll be in Tokyo.
- You can call me this evening. I'll be at home.
- Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will eat it.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- Will you be at home this evening?
- I won't be here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.

We often say **I think ... will ...**:

- I think Kelly will pass the exam.
- I don't think it will rain this afternoon.
- Do you think the exam will be difficult?

We do not use **will** for things we have already arranged or decided to do (**Units 25–26**):

- We're going to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? (not We will go)
- I'm not working tomorrow. (not I won't work)
- Are you going to do the exam? (not Will you do)

**shall**

You can say **I shall** (= I will) and **we shall** (= we will):

- I shall be late tomorrow. or I will (I'll) be late tomorrow.
- I think we shall win. or I think we will (we'll) win.

But do not use **shall** with you/they/he/she/it:

- Tom will be late. (not Tom shall be)
Exercises

27.1 Helen is travelling in Europe. Complete the sentences with she was, she’s or she’ll be.

1 Yesterday —— she was —— in Paris.
2 Tomorrow —— —— —— in Amsterdam.
3 Last week —— —— —— in Barcelona.
4 Next week —— —— —— in London.
5 At the moment —— —— —— in Brussels.
6 Three days ago —— —— —— in Munich.
7 At the end of her trip —— —— very tired.

27.2 Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use:

I’ll be ... or I’ll probably be ... or I don’t know where I’ll be.

1 (at 10 o’clock tomorrow) I’ll probably be on the beach.
2 (one hour from now)
3 (at midnight tonight)
4 (at 3 o’clock tomorrow afternoon)
5 (two years from now)

27.3 Put in will (‘ll) or won’t.

1 Don’t drink coffee before you go to bed. You won’t sleep.
2 ‘Are you ready yet?’ ‘Not yet. I’ll be ready in five minutes.’
3 I’m going away for a few days. I’m leaving tonight, so I’ll be at home tomorrow.
4 It won’t rain, so you don’t need to take an umbrella.
5 A: I don’t feel very well this evening.
   B: Well, go to bed early and you’ll feel better in the morning.
6 It’s Ben’s birthday next Monday. He’ll be 25.
7 I’m sorry I was late this morning. It didn’t happen again.

27.4 Write sentences with I think ... or I don’t think ...

1 (Kelly will pass the exam) I think Kelly will pass the exam.
2 (Kelly won’t pass the exam) I don’t think Kelly will pass the exam.
3 (we’ll win the game) I think we’ll win.
4 (I won’t be here tomorrow) I don’t think I’ll be here.
5 (Sue will like her present) I think Sue will like her present.
6 (they won’t get married) I don’t think they’ll get married.
7 (you won’t enjoy the film) I don’t think you’ll enjoy the film.

27.5 Which is right? (Study Unit 25 before you do this exercise.)

1 We’ll go / We’re going to the theatre tonight. We’ve got tickets. (We’re going is right)
2 ‘What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening?’ ‘Nothing. I’m free.’
3 They’ll go / They’re going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.
4 I’m sure your aunt will lend / is lending us some money. She’s very rich.
5 ‘Why are you putting on your coat?’ ‘I’ll go / I’m going out.’
6 Do you think Clare will phone / is phoning us tonight?
7 Steve can’t meet us on Saturday. He’ll work / He’s working.
8 Will you / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?
9 A: What are your plans for the weekend?
   B: Some friends will come / are coming to stay with us.
You can use I’ ll … (I will) when you offer something or decide to do something:
- ‘My bag is very heavy.’ I’ll carry it for you.
- ‘I’ll phone you tomorrow, OK?’ ‘OK, bye.’

We often say I think I’ll … / I don’t think I’ll … when we decide to do something:
- I’m tired. I think I’ll go to bed early tonight.
- It’s a nice day. I think I’ll sit outside.
- It’s raining. I don’t think I’ll go out.

Do not use the present simple (I go / I phone etc.) in sentences like these:
- I’ll phone you tomorrow, OK? (not I phone you)
- I think I’ll go to bed early. (not I go to bed)

Do not use I’ll … for something you decided before (→ Units 25–26):
- I’m working tomorrow. (not I’ll work)
- I don’t want my car any more. I’m going to sell it. (not I’ll sell)
- What are you doing at the weekend? (not What will you do)

Shall I …? Shall we …?

That’s the doorbell. Shall I go?
- No, it’s OK. I’ll go.

Shall I / Shall we …? = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?
- It’s very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- ‘Shall I phone you this evening?’ ‘Yes, please.’
- I’m going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?

- It’s a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- ‘Let’s go out this evening.’ ‘OK, what time shall we meet?’
Exercises

28.1 Complete the sentences. Use I’ll (I will) + these verbs:

- carry
- do
- eat
- show
- sit
- stay

1. My bag is very heavy. I’ll carry it for you.
2. I don’t want this banana. I’ll eat it.
3. Do you want a chair? I’ll do it on the floor.
4. Did you phone Sophie? I’ll show it now.
5. Are you coming with me? I’ll give it to me and here.
6. How do you use this camera? I’ll give it to you.

28.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I’ll ... or I don’t think I’ll ... + these verbs:

- buy
- buy
- go
- have
- play

1. It’s cold today. I don’t think I’ll go out.
2. I’m hungry. I’ll have something to eat.
3. I feel very tired. I don’t think I’ll play tennis.
4. I like this hat. I’ll buy it.
5. This camera is too expensive. I don’t think I’ll buy it.

28.3 Which is right?

1. I phone / I’ll phone you tomorrow, OK? (I’ll phone is right)
2. I haven’t done the shopping yet. I do / I’ll do it later.
3. I like sport. I watch / I’ll watch a lot of sport on TV.
4. I need some exercise. I think I go / I’ll go for a walk.
5. Carl is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
6. ‘This book belongs to Tina.’ OK. I give / I’ll give / I’m going to give it to her.’
7. A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?
   B: Yes, I’m going / I’ll go out with some friends.
8. I can’t go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I’m working / I’ll work.

28.4 Write sentences with Shall I ...? Choose from the two boxes.

- make
- turn off
- some sandwiches
- turn on
- the light
- the TV
- the window

1. It’s very warm in this room. Shall I turn on the window?
2. This programme isn’t very good. Shall I turn off the TV?
3. I’m hungry. Shall I make some sandwiches?
4. It’s dark in this room. Shall I turn on the light?

28.5 Write sentences with Shall we ...? Choose from the two boxes.

- what
- where
- buy
- what time
- who
- invite
- go
- meet

1. Let’s go out tonight. OK, what time shall we meet?
2. Let’s have a holiday. OK, where shall we go?
3. Let’s spend some money. OK, where shall we meet?
4. Let’s have a party. OK, what shall we invite?
might

He might go to New York. (= it is possible that he will go to New York)

It might rain. (= it is possible that it will rain)

might + infinitive (might go / might be / might rain etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Might</th>
<th>Be</th>
<th>Go</th>
<th>Play</th>
<th>Come</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I/we/you/they</td>
<td>might (not)</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I might = it is possible that I will:

- I might go to the cinema this evening, but I'm not sure. (= it is possible that I will go)
- A: When is Rebecca going to phone you?
  - B: I don't know. She might phone this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It might rain.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You might be lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
- A: Are you going out tonight?
  - B: I might. (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

- I'm playing tennis tomorrow. (sure)
  - I might play tennis tomorrow. (possible)
- Rebecca is going to phone later. (sure)
  - Rebecca might phone later. (possible)

I might not = it is possible that I will not:

- I might not go to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
- Sue might not come to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

may

You can use may in the same way. I may = I might:

- I may go to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)
- Sue may not come to the party. (= Sue might not come)

May I ...? = Is it OK to ...? / Can I ...?:

- May I ask a question? (= is it OK to ask / can I ask?)
- 'May I sit here?' 'Yes, of course.'
Exercises

29.1 Write sentences with **might**.
1 (it's possible that I'll go to the cinema) I **might** go to the cinema.
2 (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow)
3 (it's possible that Sarah will forget to phone)
4 (it's possible that it will snow today)
5 (it's possible that I'll be late tonight)

Write sentences with **might not**.
6 (it's possible that Mark will not be here next week)
7 (it's possible that I won't have time to go out)

29.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with **I might**.

fish go away Italy Monday a new car taxi

1 Where are you going for your holidays? **I'm not sure.** I **might go to Italy.**
2 What are you doing at the weekend? I don't know. I **might go to Italy.**
3 When will you see Kate again? I'm not sure. I **might go to Italy.**
4 What are you going to have for dinner? I don't know. I **might go to Italy.**
5 How are you going to get home tonight? I'm not sure. I **might go to Italy.**
6 I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it? I haven't decided yet. I might go to Italy.

29.3 You ask Ben questions about his plans for tomorrow. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

1 Are you playing tennis tomorrow? Yes, in the afternoon.
2 Are you going out tomorrow evening? Possibly.
3 Are you going to get up early? Perhaps.
4 Are you working tomorrow? No, I'm not.
5 Will you be at home tomorrow morning? Maybe.
6 Are you going to watch TV? I might.
7 Are you going out in the afternoon? Yes, I am.
8 Are you going shopping? Perhaps.

Now write about Ben. Use **might** where necessary.
1 He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.
2 He **might go out tomorrow evening.**
3 He
4
5
6
7
8

29.4 Write three things that you **might** do tomorrow.
1
2
3
**can and could**

**A**

He can play the piano.

**B**

I can do something = I know how to do it, or it is possible for me to do it:

- I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
- Sarah can speak Italian, but she can't speak Spanish.
- A: Can you swim?
  B: Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.
- A: Can you change twenty pounds?
  B: I'm sorry, I can't.
- I'm having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel can't come.

**C**

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use could/couldn't:

- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before Maria came to Britain, she couldn't understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
- I was tired last night, but I couldn't sleep.
- I had a party last week, but Paul and Rachel couldn't come.

**D**

Can you ...? Could you ...? Can I ...? Could I ...?

We use Can you ...? or Could you ...? when we ask people to do things:

- Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- Can you wait a moment, please? or Could you wait ...?

We use Can I have ...? or Can I get ...? to ask for something:

- Can I have a glass of water, please? or Can I get ...?

Can I ...? or Could I ...? = is it OK to do something?

- Can I sit here?
- Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
Exercises

30.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:

1. Can you swim?
2. Can you ride a bicycle?
3. Can you play chess?
4. Can you go for a long drive?
5. Can you play golf?
6. Can you swim in the sea?
7. Can you cook a delicious meal?
8. Can you sing well?
9. Can you speak a foreign language?

You

Steve

30.2 Complete these sentences. Use can or can't + one of these verbs:

come find hear see speak

1. I'm sorry, but we can't come to your party next Saturday.
2. I like this hotel room. You can hear the mountains from the window.
3. You are speaking very quietly. I can hear you.
4. Have you seen my bag? I can't find it.
5. Catherine got the job because she can speak five languages.

30.3 Complete these sentences. Use can't or couldn't + one of these verbs:

decide eat find go go sleep

1. I was tired, but I couldn't sleep.
2. I wasn't hungry yesterday. I didn't eat my dinner.
3. Kate doesn't know what to do. She can't decide.
4. I wanted to speak to Mark yesterday, but I couldn't find him.
5. James couldn't go to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
6. Paula couldn't go to the meeting last week. She was ill.

30.4 What do you say in these situations? Use can or could.

1. (open/door)
   Could you open the door, please?

2. (pass/salt)
   Would you like some salt?

3. (have/postcards)
   Do you have any postcards?

4. (turn off/radio)
   Turn off the radio, please.

5. (borrow/newspaper)
   Can I have the newspaper?

6. (use/pen)
   Could I use your pen?
must  mustn’t  don’t need to

must + infinitive (must do / must work etc.):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they/he/she/it</th>
<th>must</th>
<th>do</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

I must (do something) = I need to do it:
- I’m very hungry. I must eat something.
- It’s a fantastic film. You must see it.
- The windows are very dirty. We must clean them.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use had to ... (not must):
- I was very hungry. I had to eat something. (not I must eat)
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses. (not We must walk)

mustn’t (= must not)

I mustn’t (do something) = it is necessary not to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:
- I must go. I mustn’t be late.
- I mustn’t forget to phone Chris.
  (= I must remember to phone him)
- Be happy! You mustn’t be sad. (= don’t be sad)
- You mustn’t touch the pictures.
  (= don’t touch the pictures)

You mustn’t touch the pictures.

don’t need to

I don’t need (to do something) = it is not necessary:
- I don’t need to go yet. I can stay a little longer.
- You don’t need to shout. I can hear you OK.

You can also say don’t have to ...:
- I don’t have to go yet. I can stay a little longer.

Compare don’t need to and mustn’t:
- You don’t need to go. You can stay here if you want.
- You mustn’t go. You must stay here.
**Exercises**

31.1 Complete the sentences. Use **must** + these verbs:

- be
- eat
- go
- learn
- meet
- wash
- win

1. I'm very hungry. I **must** eat **something**.
2. Marilyn is a very interesting person. You **must** **meet** her.
3. My hands are dirty. I **must** **wash** them.
4. You **must** **go** to drive. It will be very useful.
5. I **must** **go** shopping. I need to buy some food.
6. The game tomorrow is very important for us. We **must** **win**.
7. You can't always have things immediately. You **must** **be** patient.

31.2 Write **I must or I had to**.

1. **I had to** walk home last night. There were no buses.
2. It's late. **I must** **go** now.
3. I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday **I had to** work.
4. **I had to** **get up** early tomorrow. I have a lot to do.
5. I came here by train. The train was full and **I had to** stand all the way.
6. I was nearly late for my appointment this morning. **I must** **run** to get there on time.
7. I forgot to phone David yesterday. **I must** **phone** him later today.

31.3 Complete the sentences. Use **mustn't or don't need to** + these verbs:

- forget
- go
- lose
- phone
- rush
- wait

1. I **don't need to go** home yet. I can stay a little longer.
2. We have a lot of time. We **don't need to** **go**.
3. Keep these papers in a safe place. You **mustn't** **lose** them.
4. I'm not ready yet, but you **don't need to** **wait** for me. You can go now and I'll come later.
5. We **mustn't** **go** to turn off the lights before we leave.
6. I must contact David, but I **don't need to** call him - I can send him an email.

31.4 Find the sentences with the same meaning.

1. We can leave the meeting early.
2. We must leave the meeting early.
3. We mustn't leave the meeting early.
4. We had to leave the meeting early.
5. We don't need to leave the meeting early.

   A. We must stay until the end.
   B. We couldn't stay until the end.
   C. We can't stay until the end.
   D. We can stay until the end.
   E. We don't need to stay until the end.

31.5 Write **must / mustn't / had to / don't need to**.

1. You **don't need to** go. You can stay here if you want.
2. It's a fantastic film. You **must** see it.
3. The restaurant won't be busy tonight. We **must** reserve a table.
4. I was very busy last week. I **had to** work every evening.
5. I want to know what happened. You **must** tell me.
6. I don't want Sue to know what happened. You **mustn't** tell her.
7. I **must** go now or I'll be late for my appointment.
8. 'Why were you so late?' 'I **had to** wait half an hour for a bus.'
9. We **mustn't** decide now. We can decide later.
10. It's Lisa's birthday next week. I **must** forget to buy her a present.
You **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:
- Tom doesn’t study enough. He **should** study harder.
- It’s a good film. You **should** go and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

You **shouldn’t** do something = it is not a good thing to do.

**Shouldn’t** = should not:
- Tom **shouldn’t** go to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn’t** watch TV so much.

We often say *I think ... should ... *

**I think** ... **should** ...

- **I think** Lisa **should** **buy** some new clothes. (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It’s late. **I think** **I should** **go** home now.
- **A:** Shall I buy this coat?  
  **B:** Yes, I think **you** **should**.

**I don’t think** ... **should** ...

- **I don’t think** you **should** **work** so hard. (= I don’t think it is a good idea.)
- **I don’t think** we **should** **go** yet. It’s too early.

**Do you think** ... **should** ... ?:

- **Do you think** **I should** **buy** this hat?
- **What time do you think** we **should** **go** home?

**Must** is stronger than **should**:

- It’s a **good** film. You **should** go and see it.
- It’s a **fantastic** film. You **must** go and see it.

Another way to say **should** is **ought to**:

- It’s a good film. You **ought to** **go** and see it. (= you should go)
- I think Lisa **ought to** **buy** some new clothes. (= Lisa should buy)
Exercises

32.1 Complete the sentences. Use you should + these verbs:

- eat
- go
- take
- visit
- watch
- wear

1. When you play tennis, you should watch the ball.
2. It's late and you're very tired. __________________________ to bed.
3. __________________________________________ plenty of fruit and vegetables.
4. If you have time, __________________________________________ the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
5. When you're driving, __________________________________________ a seat belt.
6. It's too far to walk from here to the station. __________________________ a taxi.

32.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use He/She shouldn't ... so ...

1. She shouldn't watch TV so much. 3. __________ hard.
2. __________ 4. __________

She shouldn’t watch TV so much.

32.3 You are not sure what to do, so you ask a friend. Write questions with Do you think I should ... ?

1. You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)
   You ask your friend: Do you think I should buy this jacket?
2. You can't drive. (learn?)
   You ask your friend: __________________________
3. You don't like your job. (get another job?)
   You ask your friend: __________________________
4. You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)
   You ask your friend: __________________________

32.4 Write sentences with I think ... should ... and I don't think ... should ... .

1. We have to get up early tomorrow. (go home now) I think we should go home now.
2. That coat is too big for you. (buy it) __________________________
3. You don't need your car. (sell it)
4. Karen needs a rest. (have a holiday)
5. Sarah and Dan are too young. (get married)
6. You're not well this morning. (go to work)
7. James isn't well today. (go to the doctor)
8. The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there)

32.5 What do you think? Write sentences with should.

1. I think everybody should learn another language.
2. I think everybody
3. I think
4. I don't think
5. I think I should
I have to ...  

I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>l/we/you/they</th>
<th>have to do something</th>
<th>he/she/it</th>
<th>has to do something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- Jane starts work at 7 o'clock, so she has to get up at 6.
- You have to pass a test before you can get a driving licence.

The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is had to ...

- I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.

In questions and negatives we use do/does (present) and did (past):

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>have to ... ?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>does</td>
<td>he/she/it</td>
<td>does have to ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/we/you/they</th>
<th>have to ... ?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- What time do you have to go to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Jane have to work on Sundays?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?

I don't have to (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
- Ian doesn't have to work very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We didn't have to wait very long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.

**Must and have to**

You can use must or have to when you say what you think is necessary, when you give your opinion:

- It's a fantastic film. You must see it. or You have to see it.

When you are not giving your personal opinion, use have to (not must). Compare:

- Jane won't be at work this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor.
  (this is not my personal opinion – it is a fact)
- Jane isn't well. She doesn't want to go to the doctor, but I told her she must go.
  (this is my personal opinion)
Exercises

33.1 Complete the sentences. Use have to or has to + these verbs:

**do** **hit** **read** **speak** **travel** **wear**

1. My eyes are not very good. I have to wear glasses.
2. At the end of the course all the students has to take a test.
3. Sarah is studying literature. She has to read a lot of books.
4. Albert doesn't understand much English. You have to speak very slowly to him.
5. Kate is often away from home. She has to travel a lot in her job.
6. In tennis you have to hit the ball over the net.

33.2 Complete the sentences. Use have to or had to + these verbs:

**answer** **buy** **change** **go** **walk**

1. We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
2. It’s late. I have to go home now. I’ll see you tomorrow.
3. I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I bought some food.
4. This train doesn’t go all the way to London. You have to get off at Bristol.
5. We did an exam yesterday. We had to answer six questions out of ten.

33.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

1. I have to get up early tomorrow. What time do you have to get up?
2. George had to wait a long time. How long did he have to wait?
3. Lisa has to go somewhere. Where does she have to go?
4. We had to pay a lot of money. How much money did we have to pay?
5. I have to do some work. What exactly do you have to do?

33.4 Write sentences with don’t/doesn’t/didn’t have to ...

1. Why are you going out? You don’t have to go out.
2. Why is Sue waiting? She doesn’t have to wait.
3. Why did you get up early? You didn’t have to get up.
4. Why is Paul working so hard? He doesn’t have to work so hard.
5. Why do you want to leave now? We don’t have to leave now.

33.5 Which is correct? Sometimes must and have to are both correct. Sometimes only one is correct.

1. It’s a fantastic film. You must see / have to see it. *(both are correct)*
2. Jessica won’t be at work this afternoon. She must go / has to go to the doctor. *(has to go is correct)*
3. You can’t park your car here for nothing. You must pay / have to pay.
4. I didn’t have any money with me last night, so I must borrow / had to borrow some.
5. I eat too much chocolate. I really must stop / have to stop.
6. Paul is in a hurry. He must meet / has to meet somebody in five minutes.
7. What’s wrong? You must tell / have to tell me. I want to help you.

33.6 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

1. (every day) I have to travel ten miles every day.
2. (every day) ...........................................................
3. (yesterday) ...........................................................
4. (tomorrow) ...........................................................
Would you like ...?  I’d like ...

Would you like ...? = Do you want ...?

We use Would you like ...? to offer things:
- A: Would you like some coffee?
  B: No, thank you.
- A: Would you like a chocolate?
  B: Yes, please.
- A: What would you like, tea or coffee?
  B: Tea, please.

We use Would you like to ...? to invite somebody:
- Would you like to go for a walk?
- A: Would you like to eat with us on Sunday?
  B: Yes, I’d love to. (= I would love to eat with you)
- What would you like to do this evening?

I’d like ... is a polite way to say ‘I want.’ I’d like = I would like:
- I’m thirsty. I’d like a drink.
- (in a tourist office) I’d like some information about hotels, please.
- I’m feeling tired. I’d like to stay at home this evening.

Would you like ...? and Do you like ...?

Would you like ...? / I’d like ...

Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?
- A: Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?
  (= do you want to go tonight?)
  B: Yes, I’d love to.
- I’d like an orange, please.
  (= can I have an orange?)
- What would you like to do next weekend?

Do you like ...? / I like ...

Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?
- A: Do you like going to the cinema?
  (in general)
  B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- I like oranges. (in general)
- What do you like to do at weekends?

like to do and like -ing ⇒ Unit 52  I would do something if ... ⇒ Unit 100
Exercises

34.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use Would you like ... ?

1. Would you like a chocolate?

2. ............................................................

3. ............................................................

4. ............................................................

5. ............................................................

6. ............................................................

34.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use Would you like to ... ?

1. You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
   You say:  Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?

2. You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play)
   You say: ............................................................

3. You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will come. (come)
   You say: ............................................................

4. It's raining and Sue is going out. She doesn't have an umbrella, but you have one. (borrow)
   You say: ............................................................

34.3 Which is right?

1. 'Do you like / Would you like a chocolate?'  'Yes, please.'  (Would you like is right)
2. 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?'  'Yes, I love them.'
3. 'Do you like / Would you like an ice cream?'  'No, thank you.'
4. 'What do you like / would you like to drink?'  'A glass of water, please.'
5. 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?'  'Not now. Perhaps later.'
6. I like / I'd like tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
7. What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
8. 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?'  'No, thanks. I'm not hungry.'
9. 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?'  'Yes, I'm enjoying it.'
10. I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.
11. 'I like / I'd like a sandwich, please.'  'Sure. What kind of sandwich?'
12. 'What kind of music do you like / would you like?'  'All kinds.'
We use *come/look/go/wait/be* etc. when we tell somebody to do something:

- ‘Come here and look at this!’ ‘What is it?’
- I don’t want to talk to you. Go away!
- I’m not ready yet. Please wait for me.
- Please be quiet. I’m working.

*also*

- Bye! Have a good holiday! / Have a nice time! / Have a good flight! / Have fun! (= I hope you have a good holiday etc.)
- ‘Have a chocolate.’ ‘Oh, thanks.’ (= would you like a chocolate?)

We use *don’t* ... when we tell somebody not to do something:

- Be careful! Don’t fall.
- Please don’t go. Stay here with me.
- Be here on time. Don’t be late.

You can say *Let’s* ... when you want people to do things with you. *Let’s* = Let us.

- It’s a nice day. *Let’s go* out.
  (= you and I can go out)
- Come on! *Let’s dance*.
  (= you and I can dance)
- Are you ready? *Let’s go*.
- *Let’s have* fish for dinner tonight.

- A: Shall we go out tonight?
- B: No, I’m tired. *Let’s stay* at home.

The negative is *Let’s not* ...:

- It’s cold. *Let’s not* go out. Let’s stay at home.
- *Let’s not* have fish for dinner tonight. Let’s have chicken.
Exercises

35.1 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Some sentences are positive (buy/come etc.) and some are negative (don’t buy / don’t come etc.). Use these verbs:

be  buy  come  drink  drop  forget  have  sit  sleep  smile

1. Come in!
2. Don’t drink the water!
3. It’s too expensive.
4. OK, are you ready?
5. Be careful with that!
6. I’m going to bed now.
7. Don’t worry. I won’t.
8. OK.
9. Be careful with that!

35.2 Complete the sentences. Use let’s with:

go for a swim  go to a restaurant  take a taxi  wait a little  watch TV

1. Would you like to play tennis?
   No, let’s go for a swim.
2. Do you want to walk home?
   No.
3. Shall I put a CD on?
   No.
4. Shall we eat at home?
   No.
5. Would you like to go now?
   No.

35.3 Answer with No, don’t … or No, let’s not … .

1. Shall I wait for you?
   No, don’t wait for me.
2. Shall we go home now?
   No, let’s not go home yet.
3. Shall we go out?
   No.
4. Do you want me to close the window?
   No.
5. Shall I phone you tonight?
   No.
6. Do you think we should wait for Andy?
   No.
7. Do you want me to turn on the light?
   No.
8. Shall we go by bus?
   No.
I used to ...  

Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

You can say I used to work ... / she used to have ... / they used to be ... etc.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I/you/we/they</th>
<th>used to</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>work</th>
<th>have</th>
<th>play</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- Lisa has got short hair now, but it used to be very long.
- They used to live in the same street as us, so we used to see them a lot. But we don't see them much these days.
- Helen used to have a piano, but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is I didn't use to ... :
- When I was a child, I didn't use to like tomatoes.

The question is did you use to ... ?:
- Where did you use to live before you came here?

We use used to ... only for the past. You cannot say 'I use to ...' for the present:
- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (not I use to play golf)
- We usually get up early. (not We use to get up early)
Exercises

36.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with used to ....

1. This is me a few years ago. She used to have long hair.

2. When I was younger... He used to play football.

3. I'm a hairdresser now. a taxi driver.

4. We live in London now. in the country.

5. This is me 20 years ago. I never wear glasses now.

6. This building Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Karen a few years ago

Karen now

Do you do any sport?

Yes, I swim every day and I play volleyball.

Do you go out much?

Yes, most evenings.

Do you play a musical instrument?

Yes, the guitar.

Do you like reading?

Yes, I read a lot.

Do you travel much?

Yes, I go away two or three times a year.

Write sentences about Karen with used to ...

1. She used to swim every day.

2. She

3. She

4. She

5. She

6. She

7. She

8. We

9. We

10. What games

Complete these sentences. Use used to or the present simple (I play / he lives etc.).

1. I ___________ tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.

2. 'Do you do any sport?' 'Yes, I _______ basketball.'

3. 'Do you have a car?' 'No, I ___________ one, but I sold it.'

4. George ___________ a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.

5. 'Do you go to work by car?' 'Sometimes, but most days I ___________ by train.'

6. When I was a child, I never ___________ meat, but I eat it now.

7. Mary loves watching TV. She ___________ TV every evening.

8. We ___________ near the airport, but we moved to the city centre a few years ago.

9. Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I ___________ up very early.

10. What games ___________ you ___________ when you were a child?
there is  there are

There's a man on the roof.  There's a train at 10.30.  There are seven days in a week.

singular

there is ... (there's)

is there ... ?

there is not ...

(t isn't or there's not)

- There's a big tree in the garden.
- There's nothing on TV tonight.
- A: Do you have any money?
  B: Yes, there's some in my bag.
- A: Excuse me, is there a hotel near here?
  B: Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.

plural

there are ...

are there ... ?

there are not ...

(t aren't)

- There are some big trees in the garden.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: Are there any restaurants near here?
  B: Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there in a football team?
- There are 11 players in a football team.

there is and it is

There's a book on the table.  (not It's a book on the table.)

I like this book.  It's interesting.  (It = this book)

Compare:
- 'What's that noise?'  'It's a train.'  (It = that noise)
  There's a train at 10.30.  It's a fast train.  (It = the 10.30 train)
- There's a lot of salt in this soup.
  I don't like this soup. It's too salty.  (It = this soup)
Exercises

37.1 Kentham is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Kentham with There is/are or There isn't/aren't.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a castle?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. any restaurants?</td>
<td>Yes (a lot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a hospital?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. a swimming pool?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. any cinemas?</td>
<td>Yes (two)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. a university?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. any big hotels?</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. There isn't a castle.
2. There are a lot of restaurants.
3. There's a hospital.
4. There isn't a swimming pool.
5. There are two cinemas.
6. There isn't a university.
7. There aren't any big hotels.

37.2 Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use There is/are or There isn't/aren't.

1. There are a few restaurants.
2. There's a big park.
3. There isn't a river.
4. There aren't any mountains.
5. There is a museum.
6. There aren't any beaches.

37.3 Write there is / there isn't / is there or there are / there aren't / are there.

1. Kentham isn't an old town. There aren't any old buildings.
2. Look! There's a picture of your brother in the newspaper!
3. 'Excuse me, is there a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of the street.'
4. There are five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.
5. 'How many students are there in the class?' 'Twenty.'
6. The road usually very quiet. There isn't much traffic.
7. 'Is there a bus from the city centre to the airport?' 'Yes, every 20 minutes.'
8. 'Are there any problems?' 'No, everything is OK.'
9. There isn't nowhere to sit down. There aren't any chairs.

37.4 Write sentences with There are .... Choose from the boxes.

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>seven</td>
<td>twenty-six</td>
<td>letters</td>
<td>days</td>
<td>September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eight</td>
<td>thirty</td>
<td>players</td>
<td>days</td>
<td>the USA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fifteen</td>
<td>fifty</td>
<td>planets</td>
<td>states</td>
<td>a-week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. There are seven days in a week.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. There are thirty players in the rugby team.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. There are fifteen planets in the solar system.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

37.5 Write there's / is there or it's / is it.

1. 'There's a train at 10.30.' 'Is it a fast train?'
2. I'm not going to buy this shirt. It's too expensive.
3. 'What's wrong?' 'Something is in my eye.'
4. There's a red car outside your house. Is it yours?
5. 'Is there anything good on TV tonight?' 'Yes, I want to see a programme I want to see at 8.15.'
6. 'What's that building?' 'It's a school.'
7. 'Is there a restaurant in this hotel?' 'No, I'm afraid not.'
there was/were (past)

There is a train every hour.
The time now is 11.15.
There **was** a train at 11 o’clock.

Compare:

**there is/are** (present)
- **There is** nothing on TV tonight.
- **We are** staying at a very big hotel.
- **There are** 550 rooms.
- **Is everything OK? Are there** any problems?
- **I’m hungry, but there isn’t** anything to eat.

**there was/were** (past)
- **There was** nothing on TV last night.
- **We stayed** at a very big hotel.
- **There were** 550 rooms.
- **Was everything OK yesterday? Were there** any problems?
- **I was hungry when I got home, but there wasn’t** anything to eat.

there has been / there have been (present perfect)

- **Look! There’s been** an accident. (**there’s been** = there has been)
- **This road is very dangerous. There have been** many accidents.

Compare **there was** (past):
- **There was** an accident last night. (**not There has been an accident last night.**)

For past simple and present perfect, see Unit 20.

there will be

- **Do you think there will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- **The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be** a new manager soon.
- **I’m going away tomorrow. I’ll do my packing today because there won’t be** time tomorrow. (**there won’t be** = there will not be)
Exercises

38.1 Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty, but what was in the room last week? Choose from the box and write sentences with There was ... or There were ... .

an armchair a carpet some flowers a sofa
some books a clock three pictures a small table

1. There was a clock on the wall near the window.
2. on the floor.
3. on the wall near the door.
4. in the middle of the room.
5. on the table.
6. on the shelves.
7. in the corner near the door.
8. opposite the armchair.

38.2 Write there was / there wasn’t / was there or there were / there weren’t / were there.

1. I was hungry, but there wasn’t anything to eat.
2. Was everything OK yesterday? Were there any problems?
3. I opened the envelope, but it was empty. There wasn’t nothing in it.
4. ‘We stayed at a very nice hotel.’ ‘Really? There was a swimming pool?’
5. ‘Did you buy any bananas?’ ‘No, there wasn’t any in the shop.’
6. The wallet was empty. There wasn’t any money in it.
7. ‘How many people at the meeting?’ ‘No, very few.’
8. We didn’t visit the museum. We weren’t enough time.
9. I’m sorry I’m late. There wasn’t a lot of traffic.
10. Twenty years ago there was many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

38.3 Write there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be.

1. There was a good film on TV last night.
2. 24 hours in a day.
3. a party at the club last Friday, but I didn’t go.
4. ‘Where can I get something to eat?’ There was a cafe at the end of the street.
5. ‘Why are the police outside the bank?’ There was a robbery.
6. When we arrived at the theatre, there was a long queue outside.
7. When you arrive tomorrow, there will be somebody at the station to meet you.
8. Ten years ago there were 500 children at the school. Now there have been more than a thousand.
9. Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It’s very different now. There have been a lot of changes.
10. I think everything will be OK. I don’t think there will be any problems.
Unit 39

We use *it* for time/day/distance/weather:

**Time**
- What time is *it*?
- It's half past ten.
- It's late.
- It's time to go home.

**Day**
- What day is *it*?
- It's Thursday.
- It's 16 March.
- It was my birthday yesterday.

**Distance**
- It's three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
- How far is *it* from New York to Los Angeles?
- It's a long way from here to the station.
- We can walk home. It isn't far.

We use *far* in questions (*is it far?*) and negatives (*it isn't far*).
In positive sentences, we use a long way (*it's a long way*).

**Weather**
- It's raining. *It* isn't raining. Is *it* snowing?
- It rains a lot here. It didn't rain yesterday. Does *it* snow very often?
- It's warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.
- It's a nice day today.

Compare *it* and *there*:
- It rains a lot in winter.
  There is a lot of rain in winter.
- It was very windy.
  There was a strong wind yesterday.

It's nice to ... etc.

- It's nice to see you again.
- It's impossible to understand her.
- It wasn't easy to find your house.

Don't forget *it*:
- It's raining again. (*not* is raining again)
- Is *it* true that you're going away? (*not* is true that ...)

there is ➔ Unit 37
Exercises

39.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use It's ...

1 It's raining.
2 ..........................................................................
3 ..........................................................................
4 ..........................................................................

39.2 Write it is (it's) or is it.

1 What time is it?
2 We have to go now. It's very late.
3 It's true that Ben can fly a helicopter?
4 'What day is today? Tuesday.' 'No, Wednesday.'
5 It's ten kilometres from the airport to the city centre.
6 It's OK to call you at your office?
7 'Do you want to walk to the hotel?' I don't know. How far is it?
8 It's Lisa's birthday today. She's 27.
9 I don't believe it! It's impossible.

39.3 Write questions with How far ...?

1 (here / the station) How far is it from here to the station?
2 (the hotel / the beach) How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
3 (New York / Washington) How far is it from New York to Washington?
4 (your house / the airport) How far is it from your house to the airport?

39.4 Write it or there.

1 The weather isn't so nice today. It's cloudy.
2 There was a strong wind yesterday.
3 It's hot in this room. Open a window.
4 It was a nice day yesterday. It was warm and sunny.
5 It was a storm last night. Did you hear it?
6 I was afraid because it was very dark.
7 It's often cold here, but there isn't much rain.
8 It's a long way from here to the nearest shop.

39.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

- it's easy
- dangerous
- get-up-early
- difficult
- nice
- to
- impossible
- interesting
- work here
- visit different places
- see you again
- go out alone
- make friends

1 If you go to bed late, it's difficult to get up early in the morning.
2 Hello, Jane. How are you? ........................................................................................................
3 ........................................................................................................... There is too much noise.
4 Everybody is very nice at work. ........................................................................................................
5 I like travelling. ........................................................................................................... at night.
6 Some cities are not safe. ...........................................................................................................
She isn’t tired, but he is.
(he is = he is tired)

He likes tea, but she doesn’t.
(she doesn’t = she doesn’t like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words (‘he is tired’, ‘she doesn’t like tea’).

You can use these verbs in the same way:

| am/is/are | I haven’t got a car, but my sister has. (= my sister has got a car) |
| was/were | A: Please help me. |
| have/has | B: I’m sorry. I can’t. (= I can’t help you) |
| do/does/did | A: Are you tired? |
| can | B: I was, but I’m not now. (= I was tired, but I’m not tired now) |
| might | A: Do you think Laura will come and see us? |
| must | B: She might. (= she might come) |
| I haven’t got a car, but he is. (not but he’s) |
| My sister has got a car, but I haven’t. |
| ‘Are you and Jane working tomorrow?’ ‘I am, but Jane isn’t.’ |

We don’t use ‘m/s/ve etc. (short forms) in this way. You must use am/is/have etc.:

| She isn’t tired, but he is. (not but he’s) |
| ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am. / No, I’m not.’ |
| ‘Will Alan be here tomorrow?’ ‘Yes, he will. / No, he won’t.’ |
| ‘Is there a bus to the airport?’ ‘Yes, there is. / No, there isn’t.’ |

You can use I am / I’m not etc. after Yes and No:

| ‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am. / No, I’m not.’ |
| ‘Will Alan be here tomorrow?’ ‘Yes, he will. / No, he won’t.’ |
| ‘Is there a bus to the airport?’ ‘Yes, there is. / No, there isn’t.’ |

We use do/does for the present simple (→ Units 6–7):

| I don’t like hot weather, but Sue does. (= Sue likes hot weather) |
| Sue works hard, but I don’t. (= I don’t work hard) |
| ‘Do you enjoy your work?’ ‘Yes, I do.’ |

We use did for the past simple (→ Unit 12):

| A: Did you and Chris enjoy the film? |
| B: I did, but Chris didn’t. (= I enjoyed it, but Chris didn’t enjoy it) |
| ‘I had a good time.’ ‘I did too.’ (= I enjoyed it too) |
| ‘Did it rain yesterday?’ ‘No, it didn’t.’ |
40.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (is/have/can etc.) each time.

1 Kate wasn't hungry, but we ........................................ 4 I haven't seen the film, but Tom ........................................
2 I'm not married, but my brother ........................................ 5 Karen won't be here, but Chris ........................................
3 Ben can't help you, but I ........................................ 6 You weren't late, but I ........................................

40.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/can't etc.).

1 My sister can play the piano, but I ........................................
2 Sam is working today, but I ........................................
3 I was working, but my friends ........................................
4 Mark has been to China, but I ........................................
5 I'm ready to go, but Tom ........................................
6 I've got a key, but Sarah ........................................

40.3 Complete these sentences with do/does/did or don't/doesn't/didn't.

1 I don't like hot weather, but Sue ........................................
2 Sue likes hot weather, but I ........................................
3 My mother wears glasses, but my father ........................................
4 You don't know Paul very well, but I ........................................
5 I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends ........................................
6 I don't watch TV much, but Peter ........................................
7 Kate lives in London, but her parents ........................................
8 You had breakfast this morning, but I ........................................

40.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

1 I didn't ........................................ last night, but my friends ........................................
2 I like ........................................, but ........................................
3 I don't ........................................, but ........................................
4 I'm ........................................
5 I haven't ........................................

40.5 Put in a verb, positive or negative.

1 'Are you tired?' 'I ........................................ earlier, but I'm not now.'
2 Steve is happy today, but he ........................................ yesterday.
3 The bank isn't open yet, but the shops ........................................
4 I haven't got a telescope, but I know somebody who ........................................
5 I would like to help you, but I'm afraid I ........................................
6 I don't usually go to work by car, but I ........................................ yesterday.
7 A: Have you ever been to the United States?
B: No, but Sandra ........................................ She went there on holiday last year.
8 ‘Do you and Chris watch TV a lot?’ ‘I ........................................, but Chris doesn't.’
9 I've been invited to Sam's wedding, but Kate ........................................
10 'Do you think Sarah will pass her driving test?' 'Yes, I'm sure she .........................................'
11 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I ........................................ I don't know for sure.'

40.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use Yes, I have. / No, I'm not. etc.

1 Are you American? No, I'm not.
2 Have you got a car?
3 Do you feel OK?
4 Is it snowing?
5 Are you hungry?
6 Do you like classical music?
7 Will you be in Paris tomorrow?
8 Have you ever broken your arm?
9 Did you buy anything yesterday?
10 Were you asleep at 3 a.m?
You can say have you? / is it? / can’t he? etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:
- ‘You’re late.’ ‘Oh, am I? I’m sorry.’
- ‘I was ill last week.’ ‘Were you? I didn’t know that.’
- ‘It’s raining again.’ ‘Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.’
- ‘There’s a problem with the car.’ ‘Is there? What’s wrong with it?’
- ‘Bill can’t drive.’ ‘Can’t he? I didn’t know that.’
- ‘I’m not hungry.’ ‘Aren’t you? I am.’
- ‘Sue isn’t at work today.’ ‘Isn’t she? Is she ill?’

Use do/does for the present simple, and did for the past simple:
- ‘I speak four languages.’ ‘Do you? Which ones?’
- ‘Ben doesn’t eat meat.’ ‘Doesn’t he? Does he eat fish?’
- ‘Nicola got married last week.’ ‘Did she? Really?’

Question tags

You can use have you? / is it? / can’t she? etc. at the end of a sentence. These ‘mini-questions’ are question tags.

**positive sentence → negative question tag**

- It’s a beautiful day, isn’t it?
- Kate lives in London, doesn’t she?
- You closed the window, didn’t you?
- Those shoes are nice, aren’t they?
- Tom will be here soon, won’t he?

**negative sentence → positive question tag**

- That isn’t your car, is it?
- You haven’t met my mother, have you?
- Helen doesn’t go out much, does she?
- You won’t be late, will you?

I am / I don’t etc. → Unit 40
### Exercises

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>41.1</th>
<th>Answer with <em>Do you? / Doesn’t she? / Did they? etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I speak four languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>I work in a bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I didn’t go to work yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Jane doesn’t like me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>You look tired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Kate phoned me last night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>? Which ones?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>? I work in a bank too</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>? Were you ill?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>? Why not?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>? I feel fine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>? What did she say?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>41.2</th>
<th>Answer with <em>Have you? / Haven’t you? / Did she? / Didn’t she? etc.</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I’ve bought a new car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Tim doesn’t eat meat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I’ve lost my key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sue can’t drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>I was born in Italy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>I didn’t sleep well last night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>There’s a film on TV tonight.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>I’m not happy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>I saw Paula last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Maria works in a factory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>I won’t be here next week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>The clock isn’t working.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>? What make is it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>? Does he eat fish?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>? When did you last have it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>? She should learn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>? I didn’t know that.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>? Was the bed uncomfortable?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>? Are you going to watch it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>? Why not?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>? How is she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>? What kind of factory?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>? Where will you be?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>? It was working yesterday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>41.3</th>
<th>Complete these sentences with a question tag <em>(isn’t it? / haven’t you? etc.)</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>It’s a beautiful day, <em>isn’t it?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>These flowers are nice, <em>isn’t it?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Jane was at the party, <em>isn’t she?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>You’ve been to Paris, <em>isn’t it?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>You speak German, <em>isn’t it?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Martin looks tired, <em>isn’t he?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>You’ll help me, <em>isn’t it?</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>41.4</th>
<th>Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive *(is it? / do you? etc.) or negative <em>(isn’t it? / don’t you? etc.)</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>You haven’t got a car, <em>have you</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>You aren’t tired, <em>are you?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Lisa is a very nice person, <em>isn’t she?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>You can play the piano, <em>can you?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>You don’t know Mike’s sister, <em>don’t you?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Sarah went to university, <em>didn’t she?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The film wasn’t very good, <em>wasn’t it?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Anna lives near you, <em>doesn’t she?</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>You won’t tell anybody what I said, <em>will you?</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 12   | No, I can’t drive.                                                              |
| 13   | No, I feel fine.                                                                |
| 14   | Yes, everybody likes her.                                                       |
| 15   | Yes, but I’m not very good.                                                      |
| 16   | No, I’ve never met her.                                                          |
| 17   | Yes, she studied psychology.                                                     |
| 18   | No, it was terrible.                                                             |
| 19   | That’s right. In the same street.                                                |
| 20   | No, of course not.                                                              |
too/either  so am I / neither do I etc.

We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a positive verb:
- A: I’m happy.
  - B: I’m happy **too**.
- A: I enjoyed the film.
  - B: I **enjoyed it too**.
- A: Jane is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor **too**.

We use **either** after a negative verb:
- A: I’m not happy.
  - B: I’m not happy **either**.
- A: I can’t cook.
  - B: I **can’t either**.
- A: Ben doesn’t watch TV. He doesn’t read newspapers **either**.

**so am I / neither do I** etc.

**so am I** = I am too
**so have I** = I have too (etc.):
- A: I’m working.
  - B: **So am I**. (= I’m working too)
- A: I was late for work today.
  - B: **So was Sam**.
- A: I work in a bank.
  - B: **So do I**.
- A: We went to the cinema last night.
  - B: Did you? **So did we**.
- A: I’d like to go to Australia.
  - B: **So would I**.

**neither am I** = I’m not either
**neither can I** = I can’t either (etc.):
- A: I haven’t got a key.
  - B: **Neither am I**. (= I haven’t either)
- A: Kate can’t cook.
  - B: **Neither can Tom**.
- A: I won’t (= will not) be here tomorrow.
  - B: **Neither will I**.
- A: I never go to the cinema.
  - B: **Neither do I**.

You can also use **Nor** (= Neither):
- A: I’m not married.
  - B: **Nor am I** or **Neither am I**.

Remember: **So am I** (not *So I am*), **Neither have I** (not *Neither I have*).
Exercises

42.1 Write too or either.

1. I'm happy. I'm happy too.
2. I'm not hungry. I'm not hungry.
3. I'm going out. I'm going out.
4. It rained on Saturday. It rained on Sunday.
5. Rachel can't drive a car. She can't ride a bike.
6. I don't like shopping. I don't like shopping.
7. Emma's mother is a teacher. Her father is a teacher.

42.2 Answer with So ... I (So am I / So do I / So can I etc.).

1. I went to bed late last night. I'm thirsty.
2. I've just eaten. I need a holiday.
3. I'll be late tomorrow. I was very tired this morning.
4. So did I.

Answer with Neither ... I.

7. I can't go to the party. I don't work hard.
8. I didn't phone Alex last night. I haven't got any money
9. I'm not going out tomorrow.
10. I don't know what to do.
11. I slept well last night. I've never run a marathon,

42.3 You are talking to Maria. Write sentences about yourself. Where possible, use So ... I or Neither ... I. Look at these examples carefully:

You can answer: So am I. or I'm not.

You can answer: Neither do I. or I do.

Maria

1. I'm learning English. I'm learning English.
2. I can ride a bike. I can ride a bike.
3. I'm not American. I'm not American.
4. I like cooking. I like cooking.
5. I don't like cold weather. I don't like cold weather.
6. I slept well last night. I slept well last night.
7. I've never run a marathon. I've never run a marathon.
8. I don't use my phone much. I don't use my phone much.
9. I'm going out tomorrow evening. I'm going out tomorrow evening.
10. I haven't been to Scotland. I haven't been to Scotland.
11. I didn't watch TV last night. I didn't watch TV last night.
12. I go to the cinema a lot. I go to the cinema a lot.
isn’t, haven’t, don’t etc. (negatives)

We use not (n’t) in negative sentences:

positive → negative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am</th>
<th>am not (‘m not)</th>
<th>I’m not tired.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>is not (isn’t or ’s not)</td>
<td>It isn’t (or It’s not) raining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>are not (aren’t or ’re not)</td>
<td>They aren’t (or They’re not) here.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>was not (wasn’t)</td>
<td>Julian wasn’t hungry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>were not (weren’t)</td>
<td>The shops weren’t open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>have not (haven’t)</td>
<td>I haven’t finished my work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>has</td>
<td>has not (hasn’t)</td>
<td>Sue hasn’t got a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>will not (won’t)</td>
<td>We won’t be here tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can</td>
<td>cannot (can’t)</td>
<td>George can’t drive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could</td>
<td>could not (couldn’t)</td>
<td>I couldn’t sleep last night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must</td>
<td>must not (mustn’t)</td>
<td>I mustn’t forget to phone Jane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>should</td>
<td>should not (shouldn’t)</td>
<td>You shouldn’t work so hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>would</td>
<td>would not (wouldn’t)</td>
<td>I wouldn’t like to be an actor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>don’t/doesn’t/didn’t</th>
<th>I/we/you/they do not (don’t)</th>
<th>work/live/go etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>present simple negative</td>
<td>he/she/it does not (doesn’t)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>past simple negative</td>
<td>I/they/he/she etc. did not (didn’t)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive</th>
<th>→</th>
<th>negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I want to go out.</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>I don’t want to go out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They work hard.</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>They don’t work hard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lisa plays the guitar.</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>Lisa doesn’t play the guitar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My father likes his job.</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>My father doesn’t like his job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I got up early this morning.</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>I didn’t get up early this morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They worked hard yesterday.</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>They didn’t work hard yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We played tennis.</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>We didn’t play tennis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emily had dinner with us.</td>
<td>→</td>
<td>Emily didn’t have dinner with us.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Don’t ...

Look! → Don’t look!
Wait for me. → Don’t wait for me.

Sometimes do is the main verb (don’t do / doesn’t do / didn’t do):

Do something! → Don’t do anything!
Sue does a lot at weekends. → Sue doesn’t do much at weekends.
I did what you said. → I didn’t do what you said.
Exercises

43.1 Make these sentences negative.
1 He's gone away. **He hasn't gone away.**
2 They're married.  ........................................
3 I've had dinner. ........................................

43.2 Make these sentences negative. Use **don't/doesn't/didn't**.
1 She saw me. **She didn't see me.**
2 I like cheese. ........................................
3 They understood. ....................................

43.3 Make these sentences negative.
1 She can swim. **She can't swim.**
2 They've arrived. ....................................
3 I went to the bank.  .................................
4 He speaks German.  .............................
5 We were angry.  ....................................

43.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (isn't/haven't/don't etc.).
1 They aren't rich. They **haven't** got much money.
2 ‘Would you like something to eat?’ ‘No, thank you. I:**......... hungry.’
3 I **haven't** find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4 Steve **doesn't** go to the cinema much. He prefers to watch DVDs at home.
5 We can walk to the station from here. It **isn't** very far.
6 ‘Where's Jane?’ ‘I **haven't** seen. I **haven't** seen her today.’
7 Be careful! **Don't** fall!
8 We went to a restaurant last night. I **didn't** like the food very much.
9 I've been to Japan many times, but I **haven't** been to Korea.
10 Julia **isn't** be here tomorrow. She's going away.
11 ‘Who broke that window?’ ‘Not me. I **haven't** do it.’
12 We didn't see what happened. We **didn't** looking at the time.
13 Lisa bought a new coat a few days ago, but she **hasn't** worn it yet.
14 You **haven't** drive so fast. It's dangerous.

43.5 You ask Gary some questions. He answers ‘Yes’ or ‘No’. Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.

**Gary**

**You**

Are you married? **No. 1 He isn't married.**
Do you live in London? **Yes. 2 He lives in London.**
Were you born in London? **No. 3**
Do you like London? **No. 4**
Would you like to live in the country? **Yes. 5**
Can you drive? **Yes. 6**
Have you got a car? **Yes. 7**
Do you read newspapers? **No. 8**
Are you interested in politics? **No. 9**
Do you watch TV most evenings? **Yes. 10**
Did you watch TV last night? **Yes. 11**
Did you go out last night? **Yes. 12**
is it ... ?  have you ... ?  do they ... ? etc.
(questions 1)

positive  

you  are  

You are eating.

question  

are  you  

Are you eating?  What are you eating?

In questions, the first verb (is/are/have etc.) is before the subject:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>positive subject + verb</th>
<th>question verb + subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am late.</td>
<td>Am I late?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That seat is free.</td>
<td>Is that seat free?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She was angry.</td>
<td>Why was she angry?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>David has gone.</td>
<td>Where has David gone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have got a car.</td>
<td>Have you got a car?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They will be here soon.</td>
<td>When will they be here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paula can swim.</td>
<td>Can Paula swim?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remember: the subject is after the first verb.

- Where has David gone? (not Where has gone David?)
- Are those people waiting for something? (not Are waiting ... ?)
- When was the telephone invented? (not When was invented ... ?)

do ... ? / does ... ? / did ... ?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>present simple questions</th>
<th>past simple questions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>do I/we/you/they</td>
<td>work/live/go etc. ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>does he/she/it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

positive  

They work hard.  →  Do they work hard?
You watch television.  →  How often do you watch television?
Chris works hard.  →  Does Chris work hard?
She gets up early.  →  What time does she get up?

They worked hard.  →  Did they work hard?
You had dinner.  →  What did you have for dinner?
She got up early.  →  What time did she get up?

Sometimes do is the main verb (do you do / did he do etc.):

- What do you usually do at weekends?
- A: What does your brother do?
  B: He works in a bank.
- A: I broke my finger last week.
  B: How did you do that? (not How did you that?)

Why isn't ... ? / Why don't ... ? etc. (Why + negative):

- Where's John? Why isn't he here? (not Why he isn't here?)
- Why can't Paula come to the meeting tomorrow? (not Why Paula can't ... ?)
- Why didn't you phone me last night?
Exercises

44.1 Write questions.
1 I can swim. (and you?) Can you swim?
2 I work hard. (and Jack?) Does Jack work hard?
3 I was late this morning. (and you?)
4 I've got a key. (and Kate?)
5 I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?)
6 I'm going out this evening. (and Paul?)
7 I like my job. (and you?)
8 I live near here. (and Nicola?)
9 I enjoyed the film. (and you?)
10 I had a good holiday. (and you?)

44.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

You
1 (have / a car?) Have you got a car?
2 (use / a lot?) Use it.
3 (use / yesterday?) Use it yesterday.
4 (enjoy driving?) Do you enjoy driving?
5 (a good driver?) Are you a good driver?
6 (ever / have / an accident?) Have you ever had an accident?

Yes, I have. Yes, nearly every day. Yes, to go to work. Not very much. I think I am. No, never.

44.3 Make questions with these words. Put the words in the right order.
1 (has / gone / where / David?) Where has David gone?
2 (working / Rachel / is / today?) Is Rachel working today?
3 (the children / what / are / doing?) What are the children doing?
4 (made / is / how / cheese?) How is cheese made?
5 (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) Is your sister coming to the party?
6 (you / the truth / tell / don’t / why?) Why don’t you tell the truth?
7 (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) Have your guests arrived yet?
8 (leave / what time / your train / does?) What time does your train leave?
9 (to work / Emily / why / go / didn’t?) Why didn’t Emily go to work?
10 (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) Was your car damaged in the accident?

44.4 Complete the questions.
1 I want to go out. Where do you want to go?
2 Kate and Paul aren’t going to the party. Why aren’t they going?
3 I’m reading. What?
4 Sue went to bed early. What time?
5 My parents are going on holiday. When?
6 I saw Tom a few days ago. Where?
7 I can’t come to the party. Why?
8 Tina has gone away. Why?
9 I need some money. How much?
10 Angela doesn’t like me. Why?
11 It rains sometimes. How often?
12 I did the shopping. When?
Who saw you?  Who did you see?
(questions 2)

In these questions, who/what is the subject:

- Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?)
  (not Who does live?)
- What happened? (= something happened – what?)
  (not What did happen?)
- Who's happening? (What's = What is)
- Who's got my key? (Who's = Who has)

In these questions, who/what is the object:

- Who did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody – who?)
- What did Paul say? (= Paul said something – what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was Silvia wearing?

Compare:

  What does George like? – Oranges.

Use who for people (somebody). Use what for things, ideas etc. (something):

- Who is your favourite singer?
- What is your favourite song?
### Exercises

#### 45.1

Make questions with **who** or **what**. In these questions, **who/what** is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window.  
   **Who broke the window?**
2. Something fell off the shelf.  
   **What**
3. Somebody wants to see you.  
   **me?**
4. Somebody took my umbrella.  
5. Something made me ill.  
   **Who took my umbrella?**
6. Somebody is coming.  
   **What**

#### 45.2

Make questions with **who** or **what** (subject or object).

1. I bought something.  
   **What did you buy?**
2. Somebody lives in this house.  
   **Who lives in this house?**
3. I phoned somebody.  
4. Something happened last night.  
5. Somebody knows the answer.  
6. Somebody did the washing-up.  
7. Jane did something.  
8. Something woke me up.  
9. Somebody saw the accident.  
10. I saw somebody.  
11. Somebody has got my pen.  
12. This word means something.  

#### 45.3

You want the missing information (**XXXXX**). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

1. I lost **XXXXX** yesterday, but fortunately **XXXXX** found it and gave it back to me.  
   **Who found it?**
2. **XXXXX** phoned me last night. She wanted **XXXXX**.  
   **Who phoned me?**
3. I needed some advice, so I asked **XXXXX**. He said **XXXXX**.  
4. I hear that **XXXXX** got married last week. **XXXXX** told me.  
5. I met **XXXXX** on my way home this evening. She told me **XXXXX**.  
6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. **XXXXX** won. After the game we **XXXXX**.  
7. It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. **XXXXX** gave me a book and Catherine gave me **XXXXX**.  

---

**Note:** The placeholders **XXXXX** represent the missing information that needs to be replaced with appropriate nouns or pronouns to complete the questions.
Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)

Jessica is talking to somebody.

Who is she talking to?

In questions beginning Who ... ? / What ... ? / Where ... ? / Which ... ?, prepositions (to/from/with etc.) usually go at the end:
- 'Where are you from?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- 'Jack was afraid.' 'What was he afraid of?'
- 'Who do these books belong to?' 'They're mine.'
- 'Tom's father is in hospital.' 'Which hospital is he in?'
- 'Kate is going on holiday.' 'Who with?' / 'Who is she going with?'
- 'Can we talk?' 'Sure. What do you want to talk about?'

What's it like? / What are they like? etc.

What's it like? = What is it like?
What's it like? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new (etc.)?

When we say 'What is it like?', like is a preposition. It is not the verb like ('Do you like your new house?' etc.).

A: There's a new restaurant in our street.
B: What's it like? Is it good?
A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.

A: What's your new teacher like?
B: She's very good. We learn a lot.

A: I met Nicola's parents yesterday.
B: Did you? What are they like?
A: They're very nice.

A: Did you have a good holiday? What was the weather like?
B: It was lovely. It was sunny every day.
Exercises

46.1 You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with who or what.

1. The letter is from XXXXX. Who is the letter from?
2. I’m looking for a XXXXX. What are you looking for?
3. I went to the cinema with XXXXX. Who went to the cinema with you?
4. The film was about XXXXX. What was the film about?
5. I gave the money to XXXXX. Who did you give the money to?
6. The book was written by XXXXX. Who wrote the book?

46.2 Write questions about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs + a preposition:

- go
- listen
- look
- talk
- talk
- wait

1. Who is she talking to?
2. What are they talking about?
3. Which restaurant?
4. What is it?
5. What was the weather like?
6. Which bus?

46.3 Write questions beginning Which ... ?

1. Tom’s father is in hospital. Tom’s father is in which hospital?
2. We stayed at a hotel. We stayed at which hotel?
3. Jack plays for a football team. Jack plays for which football team?
4. I went to school in this town. I went to which school?

46.4 You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with What is/are ... like?

1. (the roads) What are the roads like?
2. (the food) What is the food like?
3. (the people) What are the people like?
4. (the weather) What is the weather like?

46.5 Ask questions with What was/were ... like?

1. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather. What was the weather like?
2. Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.
3. Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.
4. Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.
Unit 47

What ...? Which ...? How ...? (questions 4)

A

What + noun (What colour ...? / What kind ...? etc.)

- What colour is your car?
- What kind of job do you want?
- What size is this shirt?
- What time is it?
- What colour are your eyes?
- What make is your TV?
- What day is it today?

What without a noun:

- What's your favourite colour?
- What do you want to do tonight?

B

Which + noun (things or people):

- Which train did you catch - the 9.50 or the 10.30?
- Which doctor did you see - Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?

We use which without a noun for things, not people:

- Which is bigger - Canada or Australia?

We use who for people (without a noun):

- Who is taller - Joe or Gary? (not Which is taller?)

C

What or which?

We use which when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):

- We can go this way or that way.
- Which way shall we go?
- There are four umbrellas here. Which is yours?

What is more general:

- What's the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- What sort of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:

- What colour are his eyes? (not Which colour?)
- Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- What is the longest river in the world?
- Which is the longest river - the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile?

D

How ...?

- 'How was the party last night?' 'It was great.'
- 'How do you usually go to work?' 'By bus.'

You can use how + adjective/adverb (how tall / how old / how often etc.):

- How tall are you? 'I'm 1 metre 70.'
- How big is the house? 'Not very big.'
- How old is your mother? 'She's 45.'
- How far is it from here to the airport? 'Five kilometres.'
- How often do you use your car? 'Every day.'
- How long have they been married? 'Ten years.'
- How much was the meal? 'Thirty pounds.'
Exercises

47.1 Write questions with what.

1. I've got a new TV. (make?)
2. I want a job. (kind?)
3. I bought a new sweater. (colour?)
4. I got up early this morning. (time?)
5. I like music. (type?)
6. I want to buy a car. (kind?)

Exercises

1. What make is it?
2. What kind of job do you want?
3. What colour?
4. What time
5. What type
6. What kind?

47.2 Complete the questions. Use Which ...

1. Which way shall we go? Left or right?
2. Which is yours?
3. Which do you prefer?
4. Which day is it today? ‘Friday.’
5. Which desk is yours?
6. Which is your favourite sport?
7. Which is more expensive, meat or fish?
8. Which is older, Liz or Steve?
9. Which kind of camera have you got?
10. A: I have three cameras. B: Which camera do you use most?
11. Which nationality are you?

47.3 Write what/which/who.

1. What is that man’s name?
2. Which way shall we go? Left or right?
3. You can have tea or coffee. Which do you prefer?
4. ‘Which day is it today?’ ‘Friday.’
5. This is a nice office. Which desk is yours?
6. Which is your favourite sport?
7. Which is more expensive, meat or fish?
8. Which is older, Liz or Steve?
9. Which kind of camera have you got?
10. A: I have three cameras. B: Which camera do you use most?
11. Which nationality are you?

47.4 Complete the questions with How + adjective or adverb (high/long etc.).

1. How high is Mount Everest?
2. How far is it to the station?
3. How old is Helen?
4. How often do the buses run?
5. How deep is the water in the pool?
6. How long have you lived here?
7. Nearly 9000 metres. It’s about two kilometres from here.
8. She’s 26. Every ten minutes. Two metres. Nearly three years.

47.5 Write questions with How ...

1. Are you 1 metre 70? 1.75? 1.80?
2. Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three?
3. Are you 20 years old? 22? 25?
4. Did you spend £20? £30? £50?
5. Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?
6. Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?
How long does it take from ... to ...?

How long does it take by plane from New York to Washington?

It takes an hour.

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?
  - It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.

- How long does it take by car from your house to the station?
  - It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

How long does it take to do something?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long</th>
<th>did</th>
<th>will</th>
<th>it take to ...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>takes</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>will take</td>
<td>a week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>didn’t</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>won’t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>three hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- How long does it take to cross the Atlantic by ship?
  - I came by train. ‘Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?’

- How long will it take to get from here to the hotel?
  - It takes a long time to learn a language.

- It doesn’t take long to cook an omelette.
  - It won’t take long to fix the computer.

How long does it take you to do something?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How long</th>
<th>does</th>
<th>it take you to ...?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>did</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>took</td>
<td>will take</td>
<td>Tom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>took</td>
<td>will take</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>took</td>
<td>will take</td>
<td>a week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>took</td>
<td>will take</td>
<td>a long time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>took</td>
<td>will take</td>
<td>three hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>took</td>
<td>will take</td>
<td>to ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
  - It will take me three days to read it.

- It takes Tom 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.

- It took us an hour to do the shopping.

- Did it take you a long time to find a job?

- It will take me an hour to cook dinner.
Exercises

48.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with How long ... ?

1. How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?
2. 
3. 
4. 

48.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.
1. fly from your city/country to London
   It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.
2. fly from your city/country to New York
3. study to be a doctor in your country
4. walk from your home to the nearest shop
5. get from your home to the nearest airport

48.3 Write questions with How long did it take ... ?
1. (Jane found a job.) How long did it take her to find a job?
2. (I walked to the station.) How long did it take you?
3. (Tom painted the bathroom.) How long did it take?
4. (I learnt to ski.) How long did it take?
5. (They repaired the car.) How long did it take them?

48.4 Read the situations and write sentences with It took ... .
1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.
   It took me three days to read the book.
2. We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock and we arrived home at 10.20.
3. I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.
4. Mark drove to London yesterday. He left home at 7 o'clock and got to London at 10.
5. Lisa began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.
6. Write a sentence about yourself.
Do you know where ...?
I don’t know what ... etc

We say: Where is Paula?

but Do you know where Paula is?
(not Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:
I know where Paula is.
I don’t know where Paula is.
Can you tell me where Paula is?

Compare:
Who are those people? but who those people are
How old is Nicola? how old Nicola is
What time is it? what time it is
Where can I go? where I can go
How much is this camera? how much this camera is
When are you going away? when you’re going away
Where have they gone? where they have gone
What was Kate wearing? what Kate was wearing

Questions with do/does/did (present simple and past simple)

Do you know where he lives? (not Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:
How do airplanes fly? how airplanes fly
What does Jane want? what Jane wants
Why did she go home? why she went
Where did I put the key? where I put the key

Questions beginning Is ... ? / Do ... ? / Can ... ? etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:
Is Jack at home? Jack is at home
Have they got a car? they’ve got a car
Can Ben swim? Ben can swim
Do they live near here? they live near here
Did anybody see you? anybody saw you

You can use if or whether in these sentences:
☐ Do you know if they’ve got a car? or
☐ Do you know whether they’ve got a car?
☐ I don’t know if anybody saw me. or
☐ I don’t know whether anybody saw me.
# Exercises

## 49.1 Answer these questions with *I don't know where/when/why ... etc.*

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Have your friends gone home?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Is Kate in her office?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Is the castle very old?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Will Paul be here soon?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Was he angry because I was late?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Has Emily lived here a long time?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 49.2 Complete the sentences.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>(How do airplanes fly?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>(Where does Susan work?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(What did Peter say?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(Why did he go home early?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(What time does the meeting begin?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>(How did the accident happen?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 49.3 Which is right?

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Do you know what time <em>is it?</em> is right? (Do you know what time <em>it is</em> is right?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Why <em>are you</em> / <em>you are</em> going away?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>I don't know where <em>are they</em> / <em>they are</em> going.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Can you tell me where <em>is the museum</em> / <em>the museum is</em>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Where <em>do you want</em> / <em>you want</em> to go for your holidays?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Do you know what <em>do elephants eat</em> / <em>elephants eat</em>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>I don't know how far <em>is it</em> / <em>it is</em> from the hotel to the station.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 49.4 Write questions with *Do you know if* ...

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>(Have they got a car?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>(Are they married?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(Does Sue know Bill?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(Will Gary be here tomorrow?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(Did he pass his exam?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 49.5 Write questions beginning *Do you know ... ?*

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>(What does Laura want?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>(Where is Paula?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>(Is she working today?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>(What time does she start work?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>(Are the shops open tomorrow?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>(Where do Sarah and Jack live?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>(Did they go to Jane's party?)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 49.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Do you know why the bus was late?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Do you know what time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Excuse me, can you tell me where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I don't know what</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Do you know if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Do you know how much</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## She said that ... He told me that ...

Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Friend</th>
<th>Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLARE</td>
<td>I'm enjoying my new job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>My father isn't well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SARAH</td>
<td>We're going to buy a house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEN</td>
<td>I have to leave early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>My sister has gone to Australia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KATE</td>
<td>I can't find a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEVE</td>
<td>I'll phone you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RACHEL</td>
<td>I don't like my job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>My son doesn't like school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIKE</td>
<td>You look tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I feel fine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Friend</th>
<th>Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLARE</td>
<td>Clare said that she was enjoying her new job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She said that her father wasn't well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SARAH</td>
<td>Sarah and Ben said that they were going to buy a house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Peter said that he had to leave early.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>He said that his sister had gone to Australia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KATE</td>
<td>Kate said that she couldn't find a job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEVE</td>
<td>Steve said that he would phone me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RACHEL</td>
<td>Rachel said that she didn't like her job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>She said that her son didn't like school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIKE</td>
<td>Mike said that I looked tired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I said that I felt fine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### say and tell

#### say (→ said)
- **He said** that he was tired.  
  *(not He said me)*
- **What did she say to you?**  
  *(not say you)*

We say **he said to me, I said to Ann** etc.  
*(not 'he said me', 'I said Ann').*

#### tell (→ told)
- **He told me** that he was tired.  
  *(not He told that)*
- **What did she tell you?**  
  *(not tell to you)*

We say **he told me, I told Ann** etc.  
*(not 'he told to me', 'I told to Ann').*

You can say:
- He said that he was tired. or He said he was tired. *(without that)*
- Kate told me that she couldn't find a job. or Kate told me she couldn't find a job.
Exercises

50.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with He/She/They said (that) ....

1. "I've lost my watch." He said he had lost his watch.
2. "I'm very busy." I don't feel very well.
3. "I can't go to the party." We'll be home late.
4. "I have to go out." I've just come back from holiday.
5. "I'm learning Russian." We haven't got a key.

50.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

1. I met Clare last week. She said she was enjoying her new job.
2. Emma didn't want anything to eat. She said she wasn't hungry.
3. I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder, but he said he didn't want to go.
4. Hannah was invited to the party, but she said she didn't want to go.
5. Susan told me she didn't want the picture. She said she didn't want it.
6. Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said he was going to buy a guitar.
7. I was looking for Robert. Nicola said he was gone home.
8. "Why did David stay at home?" "He said he was going to watch TV.
9. "Has Mary gone out?" "I think so. She said she was going to the cinema." 

50.3 Write say/said or tell/told.

1. He said he was tired.
2. What did she tell you?
3. Anna said she didn't like Peter.
4. Jack told me that you were ill.
5. Please don't tell Dan what happened.
6. Did Lucy say she would be late?
7. The woman said she was a reporter.
8. The woman told us she was a reporter.
9. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't tell them anything.
10. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't tell them anything.
work/work/going  go/going  do/doing

work/go/be etc. (infinitive)

will/can/must etc. + infinitive:

- will
  - Anna will be here soon.
- shall
  - Shall I open the window?
- might
  - I might phone you later.
- may
  - May I sit here?
- can
  - I can't meet you tomorrow.
- could
  - Could you pass the salt, please?
- must
  - It's late. I must go now.
- should
  - You shouldn't work so hard.
- would
  - Would you like some coffee?

do/does/did + infinitive:

- do/does
  - Do you work?
  - They don't work very hard.
  - Helen doesn't know many people.
  - How much does it cost?
- did
  - What time did the train leave?
  - We didn't sleep well.

B to work / to go / to be etc. (to + infinitive)

- (I'm) going to ...
  - I'm going to play tennis tomorrow.
  - What are you going to do?
- (I) have to ...
  - I have to go now.
  - Everybody has to eat.
- (I) want to ...
  - Do you want to go out?
  - They don't want to come with us.
- (I) would like to ...
  - I'd like to talk to you.
  - Would you like to go out?
- (I) used to ...
  - Dave used to work in a factory.

C working/going/playing etc.

- am/is/are + -ing
  - Please be quiet. I'm working.
  - Tom isn't working today.
  - What time are you going out?
- was/were + -ing
  - It was raining, so we didn't go out.
  - What were you doing at 11.30 yesterday?

verbs + to ... and -ing (I want to do / I enjoy doing) ➔ Unit 52  go and -ing ➔ Unit 55
Exercises

51.1 Complete the sentences. Write: ... phone Paul or ... to phone Paul.

1 I'll phone Paul ........................................
2 I'm going to phone Paul ........................................
3 Can you phone Paul? ........................................
4 Shall I phone Paul? ........................................
5 I'd like to phone Paul ........................................
6 Do you have ....................................................................?
7 You should ....................................................................
8 I want ........................................................................
9 I might ........................................................................
10 You must ......................................................................

51.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (work/go etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working/going etc.).

| do / doing | get / getting | sleep / sleeping | watch / watching |
| eat / eating | go / going | stay / staying | wear / wearing | fly / flying | listen / listening | wait / waiting | work / working |

1 Please be quiet. I'm working ..................
2 I feel tired today. I didn't sleep very well last night.
3 What time do you usually get up in the morning?
4 'Where are you?' 'To the office.'
5 Did you watch TV last night?
6 Look at that plane! It's flying very low.
7 You can turn off the radio. I'm not listening to it.
8 They didn't wait for anything because they weren't hungry.
9 My friends were waiting for me when I arrived.
10 'Does Susan always wear glasses?' 'No, only for reading.'
11 'What are you doing tonight?' 'I'm staying at home.'

51.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose from:

the infinitive (work/go etc.) or
to ... (to work / to go etc.) or
-ing (working/going etc.)

1 Shall I open the window? (open)
2 It's late. I have to go now. (go)
3 Amanda isn't working this week. She's on holiday. (work)
4 I'm tired. I don't want to go out. (go)
5 It might rain, so take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6 What time do you have to leave tomorrow morning? (leave)
7 I'm sorry I can't help you. (help)
8 My brother is a student. He's studying physics. (study)
9 Would you like to go on a trip round the world? (go)
10 When you saw Maria, what was she wearing? (wear)
11 When you go to London, where are you going to stay? (stay)
12 I'm hungry. I must have something to eat. (have)
13 'Where's Gary?' 'He's having a bath.' (have)
14 I used to have a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
15 He spoke very quietly. I couldn't hear him. (hear)
16 You don't look well. I don't think you should go to work today. (go)
17 I don't know what he said. I wasn't listening to him. (listen)
18 I missed the bus and had to walk home. (walk)
19 I want to know what happened. (know) You must tell me. (tell)
20 May I borrow this book? (borrow)
to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

verbs + to ... (I want to do)

- want
- plan
- decide
- try
- hope
- expect
- offer
- forget
- need
- promise
- refuse
- learn

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- What do you want to do this evening?
- It's not very late. We don't need to go home yet.
- Tina has decided to sell her car.
- You forgot to switch off the light when you went out.
- My brother is learning to drive.
- I tried to read my book, but I was too tired.

verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

- enjoy
- mind
- stop
- suggest
- finish

+ -ing (doing / working / being etc.)

- I enjoy dancing (not enjoy to dance)
- I don't mind getting up early.
- Has it stopped raining?
- Sonia suggested going to the cinema.

verbs + -ing or to ...

- like
- love
- start
- continue

+ -ing (doing etc.) or to ... (to do etc.)

- Do you like getting up early? or Do you like to get up early?
- I prefer travelling by car. or I prefer to travel by car.
- Anna loves dancing. or Anna loves to dance.
- I hate being late. or I hate to be late.
- It started raining. or It started to rain.

would like to ... etc.

- would like
- would love
- would prefer
- would hate

+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)

- Amy would like to meet you.
- I'd love to go to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- 'Would you like to sit down?' 'No, I'd prefer to stand, thank you.'
- I like this apartment. I wouldn't like to move.
- I live in a small village. I'd hate to live in a big city.
52.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

1. I enjoy **dancing**. (dance)
2. What do you want **to do** tonight? (do)
3. Bye! I hope **to see** you again soon. (see)
4. I learnt **to swim** when I was five years old. (swim)
5. Have you finished **to help** the kitchen? (clean)
6. Where's Anna? I need **to ask** her something. (ask)
7. Do you enjoy **to visit** other countries? (visit)
8. The weather was nice, so I suggested **to go** for a walk by the river. (go)
9. Where's Ben? He promised **to be** here on time. (be)
10. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind **to wait**. (wait)
11. What have you decided **to do**? (do)
12. Dan was angry and refused **to speak** to me. (speak)
13. I'm tired. I want **to go** to bed. (go)
14. I was very upset and started **to cry**. (cry)
15. I'm trying **to work**. Please **to stop**. (talk)

52.2 Complete the sentences using to ... or -ing. Use these verbs: go help lose rain read see send wait watch

1. ‘Have you ever been to Australia?’ ‘No, but I'd love **to go**.’
2. Amy had a lot to do, so I offered **to help** her.
3. I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect **to see** you.
4. Kate has a lot of books. She enjoys **to read**.
5. This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate **to lose** it.
6. Don't forget **to send** us a postcard when you're on holiday.
7. I'm not going out until it stops **to rain**.
8. What shall we do this afternoon? Would you like **to go** to the beach?
9. When I'm tired in the evenings, I like **to watch** TV.
10. ‘Shall we go now?’ ‘No, I'd prefer **to wait** a few minutes.’

52.3 Complete the answers to the questions.

1. Do you usually get up early? Yes, I like **to get up early**.
2. Do you ever go to museums? Yes, I enjoy **to go**.
3. Would you like to go to a museum now? No, I'm hungry. I'd prefer **to go** to a restaurant.
4. Do you drive a lot? No, I don't like **to drive**.
5. Have you ever been to New York? No, but I'd love **to go** one day.
6. Do you often travel by train? Yes, I enjoy **to travel**. I don't mind **to fly**, but a taxi would be quicker.

52.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use to ... or -ing.

1. I enjoy **to enjoy**
2. I don't like **to like**
3. If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like **to like**
4. When I'm on holiday, I like **to like**
5. I don't mind **to mind**, but **to mind**
6. I wouldn't like **to dislike**

*Additional exercise 32 (page 268)*
### I want you to ... I told you to ...

**I want you to ...**

The woman **wants to go.**

The man **doesn't want** the woman **to go.**

He **wants** her **to stay.**

We say:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I want</th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>to do something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>Sarah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **I want you to be** happy. (not I want that you are happy)
- They didn't **want anybody to know** their secret.
- Do you **want me to lend** you some money?

We use **would like** in the same way:

- **Would you like me to lend** you some money?

**We also use this structure with:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>somebody</th>
<th>to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ask</td>
<td>Sue</td>
<td>asked a friend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>told you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advise</td>
<td>What do you</td>
<td>advise me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>I didn't</td>
<td>expect them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuade</td>
<td>We</td>
<td>persuaded Gary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>I am teaching</td>
<td>to swim with us.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**I told you to ... / I told you not to ...**

→ Jane **told** me **to wait** for her.

→ Paul **told** Sue **not to wait** for him.

**D: make and let**

After **make** and **let**, we do **not use to**:

- He's very funny. He **makes** me laugh. (not makes me to laugh)
- At school our teacher **made** us work very hard.
- I didn't have my phone with me, so Sue **let** me **use** hers. (not let me to use)

- You can say **Let's ...** (= **Let us**) when you want people to do things with you:
  - Come on! **Let's dance.**
  - 'Do you want to go out tonight?' ‘No, I'm tired. **Let's stay** at home!'
Exercises

53.1 Write sentences beginning I want you ... / I don't want you ... / Do you want me ...?

1 (you must come with me) ................................................
2 (listen carefully) ................................................
3 (please don't be angry) ................................................
4 (shall I wait for you?) ................................................
5 (don't call me tonight) ................................................
6 (you must meet Sarah) ................................................

53.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 Dan persuaded ... **me to go to the cinema**.
2 I wanted to get to the station. **A woman told**.
3 Ben wasn't well. I **advised** ............................................
4 Laura had a lot of luggage. She **asked** ............................................
5 I was too busy to talk to Tom. I **told** ............................................
6 I wanted to make a phone call. Paul **let** ............................................
7 Sue is going to call me later. I **told** ............................................
8 Amy's mother taught ......................................................

53.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes **to** is necessary (to go / to wait etc.); sometimes **to** is not necessary (go/wait etc.).

arrive | borrow | get | go | go | make | repeat | tell | think | wait
---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---
1 Please stay here. I don't want you ... **to go** ... yet.
2 I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her ... **to repeat** ... it.
3 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's ... **to wait** ... a few minutes.'
4 Are they already here? I expected them ... **to arrive** ... much later.
5 Kevin's parents didn't want him ... **to get** ... married.
6 I want to stay here. You can't make me ... **to go** ... with you.
7 'Is that your bike?' 'No, it's John's. He let me ... **to borrow** ... it.'
8 Rachel can't come to the party. She told me ... **to think** ... you.
9 Would you like a drink? Would you like me ... **to do** ... some coffee?
10 'Kate doesn't like me.' 'What makes you ... **to think** ... that?'
Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop?
**To get** a newspaper.

She went to the shop **to get** a newspaper.

to ... **(to get / to see** etc.) tells us why a person does something:
- ‘Why are you going out?’ ‘To buy some food.’
- Catherine went to the station **to meet** her friend.
- Sue turned on the television **to watch** the news.
- I’d like to go to Spain **to learn** Spanish.

money/time **to** (do something):
- We need some **money to buy** food.
- I haven’t got **time to watch** television.

to ... and **for** ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to + verb</th>
<th>for + noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(to get / to see etc.)</td>
<td>(for a newspaper / for food etc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- I went to the shop **to get** a newspaper. **(not for get)**
- They’re going to Brazil **to see** their friends.
- We need some money **to buy** food.
- I went to the shop **for a newspaper**.
- They’re going to Brazil **for a holiday**.
- We need some money **for food**.

wait for ... :
- Please **wait for** me.
- Are you **waiting for** the bus?

wait to (do something):
- Hurry up! I’m **waiting to go**.
- Are you **waiting to see** the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) **to** ... :
- The lights are red. You have to **wait for them to change**.
- Are you **waiting for the doctor to come**?

They’re **waiting for the lights to change**.

goto ... and go for ... ➔ Unit 55 something to eat / nothing to do etc. ➔ Unit 79
enough + to/for ... ➔ Unit 91 too + to/for ... ➔ Unit 92
Exercises

54.1 Write sentences beginning I went to .... Choose from the boxes.

- a coffee shop + the chemist
- the station + meet a friend
- buy some vegetables + get some medicine
- the market + get a train ticket

1 I went to the station to get a train ticket.
2 I went ............................................................
3 ............................................................
4 ............................................................

54.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

- to get some fresh air + to make a train
- to read the newspaper + to see who it was
- to wake him up + to watch the news

1 I turned on the TV to watch the news ............................................................
2 Alice sat down in an armchair ........................................................................
3 Do I need a key ............................................................?
4 I went for a walk by the river ........................................................................
5 I knocked on the door of David's room ..........................................................
6 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window ........................................

54.3 Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use to ...

1 I went to the shop to get a newspaper ..........................................................
2 I'm very busy. I don't have time ...................................................................
3 I called Amy ....................................................................................................
4 I'm going out ....................................................................................................
5 I borrowed some money ...................................................................................

54.4 Write to or for.

1 I went out to get some bread.
2 We went to a restaurant to have dinner.
3 Robert wants to go to university to study economics.
4 I'm going to London for an interview next week.
5 I'm going to London to visit some friends of mine.
6 Do you have time to have a cup of coffee?
7 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time to wash.
8 Everybody needs money to live.
9 We didn't have any money to hire a taxi, so we walked home.
10 The office is very small. There's space only for a desk and chair.
11 A: Excuse me, are you waiting to be served?
   B: No, I'm already being served, thanks.

54.5 Complete these sentences. Choose from:

- it / to arrive + you / tell me + them / change + the film / begin

1 We stopped at the lights and waited for them to change ..........................
2 I sat down in the cinema and waited ..........................................................
3 We called an ambulance and waited ..........................................................
4 'Do you know what to do?' 'No, I'm waiting.' .............................................
go to ... (go to work / go to London / go to a concert etc.)

- What time do you usually go to work?
- I’m going to China next week.
- Sophie didn’t want to go to the concert.
- ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He’s gone to bed.’
- I went to the dentist yesterday.

go to sleep = start to sleep:
- I was very tired and went to sleep quickly.

go home (without to)
- I’m going home now. (not going to home)

---

goon ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go on</th>
<th>holiday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a tour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a cruise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>strike</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We’re going on holiday next week.
- Children often go on school trips.
- Workers at the airport have gone on strike.
  (= they are refusing to work)

---

gofor ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>go(somewhere) for</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a walk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a meal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- ‘Where’s Emma?’ ‘She’s gone for a walk.’
- Do you go for a run every morning?
- The water looks nice. I’m going for a swim.
- I met Chris in town, so we went for coffee.
- Shall we go out for a meal? I know a good restaurant.

---

goo + -ing

We use go + -ing for many sports (swimming / skiing etc.) and also shopping.

- Are you going shopping this afternoon?
- It’s a nice day. Let’s go swimming.
  (or Let’s go for a swim.)
- Richard has a small boat and he often goes sailing.
- I went jogging before breakfast this morning.
Exercises

55.1 Write to/on/for where necessary.

1. I'm going to China next week.
2. Richard often goes sailing. (no preposition)
3. Sue went to Mexico last year.
4. Jack goes for jogging every morning.
5. I'm going out for a walk. Do you want to come?
6. I'm tired because I went to bed very late last night.
7. Mark is going on holiday to Italy next week.
8. The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went for a swim.
9. The taxi drivers went on strike when I was in New York.
10. Let's go to the cinema this evening.
11. It's late. I have to go home now.
12. Would you like to go on a tour of the city?
13. Shall we go out for dinner this evening?
14. My parents are going on a cruise this summer.

55.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use go/goes/going/went + -ing.

1. Richard has a boat. He often goes sailing.
2. Last Saturday Emily went for a swim.
3. Dan goes for a walk every day.
4. Jessica is going on holiday next month. She is going to Portugal.
5. Peter is going out later. He has to go riding.
6. Sarah went shopping after work yesterday.

55.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box. Use to/on/for if necessary.

a swim holiday Portugal shopping sleep a walk home riding skiing university

1. The water looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
2. After leaving school, Tina went to where she studied psychology.
3. I'm going to sleep now. I have to buy a few things.
4. I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went to sleep.
5. I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went home early.
6. We live near the mountains. In winter we go skiing on most weekends.
7. Robert has got a horse. He goes riding a lot.
8. The weather is nice. Shall we go for a walk along the river?
9. A: Are you going soon?
   B: Yes, next month. We're going to Portugal. We've never been there before.
**get**

**get + noun = receive, buy, find etc.**

You don't have something → you get it → you have it

- I got an email from Sam this morning. (= receive)
- I like your sweater. Where did you get it? (= buy)
- It's hard to get a job at the moment? (= find)
- 'Is Lisa here?' 'Yes, I'll get her for you.'

*also* get a bus / a train / a taxi (= take a bus/train etc.):
- 'Did you walk here?' 'No, I got the bus.'

**get hungry / get cold / get tired etc.**

You're not hungry → you get hungry → you are hungry

- If you don't eat, you get hungry.
- Drink your coffee. It's getting cold.
- I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she gets better soon.
- It was raining very hard. We didn't have an umbrella, so we got very wet.

*also* get married

get dressed (= put your clothes on)
get lost (= lose your way)

- Nicola and Frank are getting married soon.
- I got up and got dressed quickly.
- We didn't have a map, so we got lost.

**get to a place = arrive:**

- I usually get to work before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
- We left London at 10 o'clock and got to Manchester at 12.45.

**get here/there** (without to):

- How did you get here? By bus?

**get home** (without to):
- What time did you get home last night?

**get in/out/on/off**

- Kate got in the car and drove away. (You can also say: Kate got into the car and ...)
- A car stopped and a man got out. (but A man got out of the car.)
- We got on the bus outside the hotel and got off in Church Street.
### Exercises

#### 56.1 Complete these sentences. Use get/gets and choose from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a doctor</th>
<th>a lot of rain</th>
<th>a taxi</th>
<th>my email</th>
<th>the job</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a good salary</td>
<td>a new laptop</td>
<td>a ticket</td>
<td>some milk</td>
<td>your boots</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Did you **get** my email? I sent it a week ago.
2. Where did you **get** my email? They're very nice.
3. Quick! This man is ill. We need to **get** him to a doctor.
4. I don't want to walk home. Let's **get** a taxi.
5. Tom has an interview tomorrow. I hope he **gets** the job.
6. When you go to the shop, can you **get** some milk?
7. 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I **get** some tickets.'
8. Helen has got a well-paid job. She **gets** a good salary.
9. The weather is horrible here in winter. We **get** a lot of rain.
10. I'm going to **get** a new laptop. The one I have is too slow.

#### 56.2 Complete these sentences. Use getting + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>not ready</th>
<th>not married</th>
<th>not late</th>
<th>not dark</th>
<th>not cold</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Drink your coffee. It's **getting** cold.
2. Turn on the light. It's **getting** dark.
3. 'I'm **getting** ready next week.' 'Really? Congratulations!'
4. 'Where's Karen?' 'She's **getting** married. She's going to go out.'
5. It's **getting** late. It's time to go home.

#### 56.3 Complete the sentences. Use get/gets/got + these words:

| got married | got lost | got angry | got old | got hungry | got wet |

1. If you don't eat, you **get** hungry.
2. Don't go out in the rain. You'll **get** wet.
3. My brother **got** married last year. His wife's name is Sarah.
4. Mark is always very calm. He never **gets** angry.
5. We tried to find the hotel, but we **got** lost.
6. Everybody wants to stay young, but we **get** old.
7. Yesterday the weather wasn't so good at first, but it **got** better during the day.

#### 56.4 Write sentences with I left ... and got to ...

1. home / 7.30 → work / 8.15
   I left home at 7.30 and **got** to work at 8.15.
2. London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45
   I left London at 10.15 and **got** to Bristol.
3. the party / 11.15 → home / midnight
   I **got** to the party at 11.15 and **got** home at midnight.

4. Write a sentence about yourself.
   I left

#### 56.5 Write got in / got out of / got on / got off.

1. Kate **got** in the car and drove away.
2. I **got** on the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
3. Isabel **got** off the car, shut the door and went into a shop.
4. I made a stupid mistake. I **got** off the wrong train.
do and make

Do is a general word for actions:

- What are you **doing** this evening? (not What are you **making**?)
- ‘Shall I open the window?’ ‘No, it’s OK. I’ll **do** it.’
- Rachel’s job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

**What do you do?** = What’s your job?:

- ‘What do you **do**?’ ‘I work in a bank.’

Make = produce/create. For example:

- She’s **making** coffee.
- He has **made** a cake.
- They **make** umbrellas.
- It was **made** in China.

Compare **do** and **make**:

- I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters and I **made** a cake.
- A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?
  B: I **make** clothes. I **make** dresses and jackets. I also **make** toys for my children.

Expressions with **do**

- I’m **doing** my driving test next week.
- John has just **done** a training course.
- Our children have to **do** a lot of homework.
- I hate **doing** housework, especially cleaning.
- Sue, could you **do** me a favour?
- I go for a run and **do** exercises every morning.

*also do the shopping / do the washing / do the washing-up / do the ironing / do the cooking* etc.:

- I **did** the washing, but I didn’t **do** the shopping.

Expressions with **make**

- I’m sorry, I **made** a mistake.
- I need to **make** an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to **make** a phone call.
- Have you **made** a shopping list?
- It’s late. Don’t **make** a noise.
- Sometimes I forget to **make** my bed in the morning.

We say **make** a film but **take** a photo / **take** a picture:

- When was this film **made**?
- When was this photo **taken**?

---

**do**/**does**/**did** (negatives and questions) ➔ Units 43–44  
**make** somebody do something ➔ Unit 53
Exercises

57.1 Write make/making/made or do/doing/did/done.

1 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll...do...it.'
2 What did you...at the weekend? Did you go away?
3 Do you know how to...bread?
4 Paper is...from wood.
5 Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and...nothing.
6 'What do you...?' 'I'm a doctor.'
7 I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you...it?
8 'What do they...in that factory?' 'Shoes.'
9 I'm...some coffee. Would you like some?
10 Why are you angry with me? I didn't...anything wrong.
11 'What are you...tomorrow afternoon?' 'I'm working.'

57.2 What are these people doing?

He's...a cake.
They...
He...

57.3 Write make or do in the correct form.

1 I hate...housework, especially cleaning.
2 Why do you always...the same mistake?
3 'Can you...me a favour?' 'It depends what it is.'
4 'Have you...your homework?' 'Not yet.'
5 I need to see the dentist, but I haven't...an appointment.
6 I'm...a course in photography at the moment. It's very good.
7 The last time I...an exam was ten years ago.
8 How many phone calls did you...yesterday?
9 When you've finished Exercise 1, you can...Exercise 2.
10 There's something wrong with the car. The engine is...a strange noise.
11 It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever...
12 Let's...a list of all the things we have to...today.
have

**have and have got**

I have (something) or I've got (something) = it is mine:

- I have a new car. or I've got a new car.
- Sue has long hair. or Sue has got long hair.
- Do they have any children? or Have they got any children?
- Tom doesn't have a job. or Tom hasn't got a job.
- How much time do you have? or How much time have you got?

**also**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I have</th>
<th>I've got</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a headache / (a) toothache / a pain (in my leg etc.)</td>
<td>a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I have a headache. or I've got a headache.
- Do you have a cold? or Have you got a cold?

The past is I had (without got) / I didn't have / Did you have? etc.:

- When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
- He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- Did you have enough time to do everything you wanted?

**have breakfast / have a shower** etc.

In these expressions have = eat/drink/take etc. You can’t use ‘have got’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>breakfast / lunch / dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something to eat/drink</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 'Where's Lisa?' 'She's having lunch.'
- I don't usually have breakfast.
- I had three cups of coffee this morning.
- 'Have a biscuit!' 'Oh, thank you.'

We also use have (not have got) in these expressions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a bath / a shower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a rest / a holiday / a party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a nice time / a good trip / fun etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a dream / an accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a baby</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a look (at something)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I had a shower this morning.
- We're having a party next week. You must come.
- Enjoy your holiday. Have a nice time!
- Did you have a good time in Tokyo?
- Sandra has just had a baby.
- Can I have a look at your magazine?

**Compare:**

**Have or have got**

- I have / I've got a new shower. It's very good.

**Have (not have got)**

- I have a shower every morning.
  (not I've got a shower every morning)
- A: Where's Paul?
  B: He's having a shower.
  (= he's washing now)
Exercises

58.1 Write the correct form of have or have got.
1 I didn't have time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2 'Has Lisa got (OR: Does Lisa have) a car?' 'No, she can't drive.' (Lisa / have?)
3 He can't open the door. a key. (he / not / have)
4 a cold last week. He's better now. (Gary / have)
5 What's wrong? a headache? (you / have?)
6 We wanted to go by taxi, but enough money. (we / not / have)
7 Laura is very busy. much free time. (she / not / have)
8 any problems when you were on holiday? (you / have?)

58.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list:

- a bath
- breakfast
- a cup of tea
- dinner
- a good time
- a rest

1 They're having breakfast.
2 She
3 He
4 They
5
6

58.3 What do you say in these situations? Use have.

1 Emily is going on holiday. What do you say to her before she goes?
   Have a nice holiday!

2 You meet Clare at the airport. She has just got off her plane. Ask her about the flight.
   Did you have a good flight?

3 Tom is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?

4 It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.

5 Paul has just come home after playing tennis with a friend. Ask him about the game.

6 Rachel is going out this evening. What do you say to her before she goes?

7 Mark has just returned from holiday. Ask him about his holiday.

58.4 Complete the sentences. Use have/had and choose from the list.

- an accident
- a glass of water
- a look
- a walk
- a party
- something to eat

1 We had a party a few weeks ago. We invited 50 people.
2 ‘Shall we a glass of water?’ ‘No, I'm not hungry.’
3 I was thirsty, so I a look...
4 I like to get up early and before breakfast.
5 Tina is a very good driver. She has never...
6 There's something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you at it?
People

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I know Tom. Tom knows me.
We know Tom. Tom knows us.
You know Tom. Tom knows you.
He knows Tom. Tom knows him.
She knows Tom. Tom knows her.
They know Tom. Tom knows them.

Things

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It's nice. I like it.
They're nice. I like them.

- I don't want this book. You can have it.
- I don't want these books. You can have them.
- Kate never drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- I never go to parties. I don't like them.

We use me/her/them etc. (object) after a preposition (for/to/with etc.):

- This letter isn't for me. It's for you.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come with us?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with them?
- ‘Where's the newspaper?’ ‘You're sitting on it.’

give it/them to ...:

- I want that book. Please give it to me.
- Robert needs these books. Can you give them to him, please?

my/his/their etc. ➔ Unit 60  Give me that book / Give it to me ➔ Unit 96
Exercises

59.1 Complete the sentences with him/her/them.
1 I don't know those girls. Do you know them?
2 I don't know that man. Do you know ...........?
3 I don't know those people. Do you know ...........?
4 I don't know David's wife. Do you know ...........?
5 I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know ...........?
6 I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know ...........?
7 I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know ...........?

59.2 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/you/she/her etc.
1 I want to see her, but she doesn't want to see me.
2 They want to see me, but ........... don't want to see ........... .
3 She wants to see him, but ........... doesn't want to see ........... .
4 We want to see them, but ........... don't want to see ........... .
5 He wants to see us, but ........... don't want to see ........... .
6 They want to see her, but ........... doesn't want to see ........... .
7 I want to see them, but ........... don't want to see ........... .
8 You want to see her, but ........... doesn't want to see ........... .

59.3 Write sentences beginning I like ..., I don't like ... or Do you like ...?
1 I don't eat tomatoes. I don't like them.
2 George is a very nice man. I like ........... .
3 This jacket isn't very nice. I don't ........... .
4 This is my new car. Do ........... ?
5 Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I ........... .
6 These are my new shoes ........... .

59.4 Complete the sentences. Use I/me/he/him etc.
1 Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her?
2 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I work with ........... .
3 Where are the tickets? I can't find ........... .
4 I can't find my keys. Where are ........... .
5 We're going out. You can come with ........... .
6 I've got a new motorbike. Do you want to see ........... .
7 Maria likes music. ........... plays the piano.
8 I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of ........... .
9 I'm talking to you. Please listen to ........... .
10 Where is Anna? I want to talk to ........... .
11 You can have these CDs. I don't want ........... .
12 My brother has a new job, but ........... doesn't like ........... very much.

59.5 Complete the sentences.
1 I need that book. Can you give it to me?
2 He wants the key. Can you give ........... ?
3 She wants the keys. Can you ........... ?
4 I need my bag. Can you ........... ?
5 They want the money. Can you ........... ?
6 We want the pictures. Can you ........... ?
my/his/their etc.

**Unit 60**

**A**

| I → my | I like my house. |
| we → our | We like our house. |
| you → your | You like your house. |
| he → his | He likes his house. |
| she → her | She likes her house. |
| they → their | They like their house. |

**B**

**its**

Oxford (= it) is famous for its university.

**C**

**its**

Oxford is famous for its university.

**it’s** (= it is)

I like Oxford. It’s a nice place. (= It is a nice place.)

We use *my/your/his* etc. + noun:

- my hands
- his new car
- her parents
- our clothes
- your best friend
- their room
Exercises

60.1 Complete the sentences in the same way.
1 I’m going to wash my hands.
2 She’s going to wash her hands.
3 We’re going to wash our hands.
4 He’s going to wash his hands.
5 They’re going to wash their hands.
6 Are you going to wash your hands?

60.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.
1 He lives with his parents.
2 They live with their parents.
3 We live with our parents.
4 Martina lives with her parents.
5 I live with my parents.
6 John lives with his parents.
7 Do you live with your parents?
8 Most children live with their parents.

60.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with his/her/their.
1 I saw Sarah with her husband, Philip.
2 I saw Laura and Steve with their children.
3 I saw Steve with his wife, Laura.
4 I saw Ben with his brother, Will.
5 I saw Laura with her brother, Will.
6 I saw Sarah and Philip with their son, Will.
7 I saw Laura with her parents.
8 I saw Beth and Robert with their parents.

60.4 Write my/our/your/his/her/their/its.
1 Do you like your job?
2 I know Mr Watson, but I don’t know his wife.
3 Alice and Tom live in London. Their son lives in Australia.
4 We’re going to have a party. We’re going to invite all our friends.
5 Anna is going out with her friends this evening.
6 I like tennis. It’s my favourite sport.
7 Is that your car? No, I don’t have a car.
8 I want to contact Maria. Do you know her number?
9 Do you think most people are happy in their jobs?
10 I’m going to wash my hair before I go out.
11 This is a beautiful tree. Its leaves are a beautiful colour.
12 John has a brother and a sister. His brother is 25, and her sister is 21.

60.5 Complete the sentences. Use my/his/their etc. with these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>coat</th>
<th>homework</th>
<th>house</th>
<th>husband</th>
<th>job</th>
<th>key</th>
<th>name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1 James doesn’t enjoy his job. It’s not very interesting.
2 I can’t get in. I don’t have a key.
3 Sally is married. Her husband works in a bank.
4 Please take off your coat and sit down.
5 ‘What are the children doing?’ ‘They’re doing their homework.’
6 ‘Do you know that man?’ ‘Yes, but I don’t know his name.’
7 We live in Barton Street. Our house is at the end on the left.
Whose is this?
It's mine/yours/hers etc.

We use my/your etc. + noun (my hands / your book etc.):

- My hands are cold.
- Is this your book?
- Helen gave me her umbrella.
- It's their problem, not our problem.

We use mine/yours etc. without a noun:

- Is this book mine or yours? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Sarah gave me hers. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not ours. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in theirs. (= their car)

You can use his with or without a noun:

- 'Is this his camera or hers?' 'It's his.'

a friend of mine / a friend of his / some friends of yours etc.

- I went out to meet a friend of mine. (not a friend of me)
- Tom was in the restaurant with a friend of his. (not a friend of him)
- Are those people friends of yours? (not friends of you)

Whose ...?

- Whose phone is this? (= Is it your phone? his phone? my phone? etc.)

You can use whose with or without a noun:

- Whose money is this? It's mine.
- Whose are these? They're John's.
Exercises

61.1 Complete the sentences with mine/yours etc.
1. It's your money. It's yours ..........................................
2. It's my bag. It's ..................................................
3. It's our car. It's ..................................................
4. They're her shoes. They're ..................................
5. It's their house. It's ..........................................
6. They're your books. They're ..................................
7. They're my glasses. They're ..................................
8. It's his coat. It's ..................................................

61.2 Choose the right word.
1. It's their/their problem, not our/ours. (their and ours are right)
2. This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3. That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4. Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5. Catherine is going out with her/hers friends this evening.
6. My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7. They have two children, but I don't know their/theirs names.
8. Can we use your washing machine? Our/Ours isn't working.

61.3 Complete these sentences. Use friend(s) of mine/yours etc.
1. I went to the cinema with a friend of mine ..........................................
2. They went on holiday with some friends of theirs ..........................
3. She's going out with a friend ..................................................
4. We had dinner with some ..................................................
5. I played tennis with a ..................................................
6. Tom is going to meet a ..................................................
7. Do you know those people? Are they ..................................

61.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

1. Whose car is this? It's theirs.
2. .................................................. is this? It's ..................................................
3. .................................................. these? They ..................................................
4. .................................................. money? ..................................................
5. .................................................. ..................................................
6. .................................................. ..................................................
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I etc. etc. (→ Unit 59)</th>
<th>me etc. etc. (→ Unit 59)</th>
<th>my etc. etc. (→ Unit 60)</th>
<th>mine etc. etc. (→ Unit 61)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows me.</td>
<td>It’s my car.</td>
<td>It’s mine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows us.</td>
<td>It’s our car.</td>
<td>It’s ours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows you.</td>
<td>It’s your car.</td>
<td>It’s yours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows him.</td>
<td>It’s his car.</td>
<td>It’s his.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She knows Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows her.</td>
<td>It’s her car.</td>
<td>It’s hers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They know Tom.</td>
<td>Tom knows them.</td>
<td>It’s their car.</td>
<td>It’s theirs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study these examples:

- ‘Do you know that man?’ ‘Yes, I know him, but I can’t remember his name.’
- She was very pleased because we invited her to stay with us at our house.
- A: Where are the children? Have you seen them?
  - B: Yes, they are playing with their friends in the park.
- That’s my pen. Can you give it to me, please?
- ‘Is this your umbrella?’ ‘No, it’s yours.’
- He didn’t have an umbrella, so she gave him hers. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I’m going out with a friend of mine this evening. (not a friend of me)
Exercises

62.1 Answer the questions in the same way.

1. Do you know that man? Yes, I know him, but I can’t remember his name.

2. Do you know that woman? Yes, I know her but I can’t remember.

3. Do you know those people? Yes, I know them, but I can’t remember their names.

4. Do you know me? Yes, I do know you.

62.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. We invited her to stay with us at our house.

2. He invited us to stay with him at his house.

3. They invited me to stay with them at their house.

4. I invited them to stay with me at my house.

5. She invited us to stay with her at her house.

6. Did you invite him to your house?

62.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. I gave him my phone number, and he gave me his.

2. I gave her my phone number, and she gave me her.

3. He gave me his phone number, and I gave her.

4. We gave them our phone number, and they gave us.

5. She gave him her phone number, and he gave.

6. You gave us your phone number, and we gave.

7. They gave you their phone number, and you gave.

62.4 Write him/her/yours etc.

1. Where’s Amanda? Have you seen her?

2. Where are my keys? Where did I put yours?

3. This book belongs to Ben. Can you give it to yours?

4. We don’t see their neighbours much. They’re not at home very often.

5. ‘I can’t find my phone. Can I use yours?’ ‘Yes, of course.’

6. We’re going to the cinema. Why don’t you come with yours?

7. Did your sister pass yours exams?

8. Some people talk about their work all the time.

9. Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of yours.
myself/yourself/themselves etc.

A

He's looking at himself.

They're enjoying themselves.

I → me → myself
he → him → himself
she → her → herself
you → you → yourself
we → us → ourselves
they → them → themselves

I looked at myself in the mirror.
He cut himself with a knife.
She fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt herself.
Please help yourself.
Please help yourselves.
We had a nice time.
They enjoyed themselves.

B

Compare:

me/him/them etc.

She is looking at him.

myself/himself/themselves etc.

He is looking at himself.

You never talk to me.
I didn't pay for them.
I'm sorry. Did I hurt you?

Sometimes I talk to myself.
They paid for themselves.
Be careful. Don't hurt yourself.

C

by myself / by yourself etc. = alone:

I went on holiday by myself. (= I went alone)
Was she with friends? No, she was by herself.

D

each other

Kate and Helen are good friends. They know each other well. (= Kate knows Helen / Helen knows Kate)
Paul and I live near each other. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare each other and -selves:

James and Sue looked at each other.
(= he looked at her, she looked at him)

James and Sue looked at themselves.
(= he looked at himself, she looked at herself)
Exercises

63.1 Complete the sentences with myself/yourself etc.
1. He looked at _______ himself ______ in the mirror.
2. I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with _______ .
3. Karen had a good time in Australia. She enjoyed _______ .
4. My friends had a good time in Australia. They enjoyed _______ .
5. I picked up a very hot plate and burnt _______ .
6. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about _______ .
7. I want to know more about you. Tell me about _______ . (one person)
8. Goodbye! Have a good trip and take care of _______ ! (two people)

63.2 Write sentences with by myself / by yourself etc.
1. I went on holiday alone. _______ went on holiday by myself.
2. When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he _______ .
3. Don't go out alone. Don't _______ .
4. I went to the cinema alone. I _______ .

63.3 Write sentences with each other.

63.4 Complete the sentences. Use:
   each other or ourselves/yourselves/themselves or us/you/them
   1. Paul and I live near _______ each other _______ .
   2. Who are those people? Do you know _______ them _______ ?
   3. You can help Tom, and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help _______ .
   4. There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help _______ .
   5. We didn't go to Emily's party. She didn't invite _______ .
   6. When we go on holiday, we always enjoy _______ .
   7. Helen and Jane were at school together, but they never see _______ now.
   8. Karen and I are very good friends. We've known _______ for a long time.
   9. 'Did you see Sam and Laura at the party?' 'Yes, but I didn't speak to _______ .'
   10. Many people talk to _______ when they're alone.
-’s (Kate’s camera / my brother’s car etc.)

We normally use -’s for people:

- I stayed at my sister’s house. (not the house of my sister)
- Have you met Mr Black’s wife? (not the wife of Mr Black)
- Are you going to James’s party?
- Paul is a man’s name. Paula is a woman’s name.

You can use -’s without a noun after it:

- Sophie’s hair is longer than Kate’s. (= Kate’s hair)
- ‘Whose umbrella is this?’ ‘It’s my mother’s.’ (= my mother’s umbrella)
- ‘Where were you last night?’ ‘I was at Paul’s.’ (= Paul’s house)

friend’s and friends’

- my friend’s house = one friend
  (= his house or her house)
- We write ’ after friend/student/mother etc. (singular):
  my mother’s car (one mother)
  my father’s car (one father)

- my friends’ house = two or more friends
  (= their house)
- We write ’ after friends/students/parents etc. (plural):
  my parents’ car (two parents)

We use of ... for things, places etc.:

- Look at the roof of that building. (not that building’s roof)
- We didn’t see the beginning of the film. (not the film’s beginning)
- What’s the name of this village?
- Do you know the cause of the problem?
- You can sit in the back of the car.
- Madrid is the capital of Spain.
Exercises

64.1 Look at the family tree. Complete the sentences about the people in the family.

Helen and Brian are married. They have a son, James, and a daughter, Sarah. Sarah is married to Paul. Sarah and Paul have a son, Daniel.

1. Brian is Helen's ____________ husband.
2. Sarah is Daniel's ____________ mother.
3. Helen is ____________ wife.
4. James is Sarah's ____________.
5. James is ____________ uncle.
6. Sarah is ____________ wife.
7. Helen is Daniel's ____________.
8. Sarah is James's ____________.
9. Paul is ____________ husband.
10. Paul is Daniel's ____________.
11. Daniel is ____________ nephew.

64.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.

1. Whose is this? ____________________
2. Whose is this? ____________________
3. And this? ____________________
4. And these? ____________________
5. And this? ____________________
6. And these? ____________________

64.3 Are these sentences OK? Change them where necessary.

1. I stayed at the house of my sister.
2. What is the name of this village?
3. Do you like the colour of this coat?
4. Do you have the phone number of Simon?
5. The job of my brother is very interesting.
6. Write your name at the top of the page.
7. For me, the morning is the best part of the day.
8. The favourite colour of Paula is blue.
9. When is the birthday of your mother?
10. The house of my parents isn't very big.
11. The walls of this house are very thin.
12. The car stopped at the end of the street.
13. Are you going to the party of Silvia next week?
14. The manager of the hotel is not here at the moment.
He's got a camera. She's waiting for a taxi. It's a beautiful day.

\[ a \ldots = \text{one thing or person:} \]
- Rachel works in a bank (not in bank)
- Can I ask a question? (not ask question)
- I don't have a job at the moment.
- There's a woman at the bus stop.

\[ \text{an (not a) before a/e/i/o/u:} \]
- Do you want an apple or a banana?
- I'm going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
- There was an interesting programme on TV last night.

\[ \text{also an hour (h is not pronounced: an Hour)} \]
\[ \text{but a university (pronounced yuniversity)} \]
\[ \text{a European country (pronounced yuropean)} \]

\[ \text{another (= an + other) is one word:} \]
- Can I have another cup of coffee?

We use a/an ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:
- The sun is a star.
- Football is a game.
- Dallas is a city in Texas.
- A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.
- Joe is a very nice person.

We use a/an ... for jobs etc.:
- A: What's your job?
  B: I'm a dentist. (not I'm dentist)
- ‘What does Mark do?’ ‘He's an engineer.’
- Would you like to be a teacher?
- Beethoven was a composer.
- Picasso was a famous painter.
- Are you a student?
Exercises

65.1 Write a or an.
1 an old book 2 new airport 3 organisation 4 airport 5 new airport 6 organisation 7 university 8 hour 9 economic problem

65.2 What are these things? Choose from the box.

- bird - flower - fruit - game - mountain - river - tool - musical instrument

<p>| | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A duck is a bird</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Saturn is</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>A banana is</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>The Amazon is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A carrot is</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>A rose is</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Everest is</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>A trumpet is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Tennis is</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>A banana is</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Saturn is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>A hammer is</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>A rose is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Everest is</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>A trumpet is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

65.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

- architect - dentist - shop assistant - photographer
- electrician - nurse - taxi driver

1 She's a dentist.
2 He's.
3 She...
4 And you? I'm.

65.4 Write sentences. Choose from the two boxes. Use a/an where necessary.

- I want to ask you. Rebecca works in. old house. artist
- Tom never wears. Jane wants to learn. party. question
- I can't ride. Mike lives in. bookshop. foreign language
- My brother is. This evening I'm going to. hat. bike

1 I want to ask you a question.
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
train(s)  bus(es)  (singular and plural)

The plural of a noun is usually -(s):

**singular ( = one) → plural ( = two or more)**

- a flower → some flowers
- a train → two trains
- one week → a few weeks
- a nice place → some nice places
- this student → these students

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-s / -sh / -ch / -x</th>
<th>-es</th>
<th>bus → buses</th>
<th>dish → dishes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>also</td>
<td></td>
<td>church → churches</td>
<td>box → boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>potato → potatoes</td>
<td>tomato → tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>-ies</td>
<td>baby → babies</td>
<td>dictionary → dictionaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but -ay / -ey / -oy</td>
<td>-ys</td>
<td>day → days</td>
<td>monkey → monkeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>shelf → shelves</td>
<td>knife → knives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These things are plural:

- scissors  glasses  trousers  jeans  shorts  tights  pyjamas

- Do you wear glasses?
- Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of trousers / a pair of pyjamas etc.:

- I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. (not a new jeans)

Some plurals do not end in -(s):

- this man → these men
- a woman → some women
- a child → many children
- one foot → two feet
- a tooth → all my teeth
- a mouse → some mice
- that sheep → those sheep
- a fish → a lot of fish

also a person → two people / some people / a lot of people etc.:

- She's a nice person.
- But they are nice people. (not nice persons)

People is plural (= they), so we say people are / people have etc.:

- A lot of people speak English. (not speaks)
- I like the people here. They are very friendly.

Police is plural:

- The police want to talk to anybody who saw the accident. (not The police wants)
Exercises

66.1 Write the plural.

1. flower __________ flowers
2. boat __________ 6. address
3. woman __________ 7. knife
4. city __________ 8. sandwich
5. umbrella __________ 9. family
10. foot
11. holiday
12. potato

66.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. There are a lot of __________ sheep in the field.
2. Gary is cleaning his __________ .
3. There are three __________ at the bus stop.
4. Lucy has two __________ .
5. There are a lot of __________ in the river.
6. The __________ are falling from the tree.

66.3 Are these sentences OK? Change the sentences where necessary.

1. I'm going to buy some flowers.
2. I need a new jeans.
3. It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree.
4. There was a woman in the car with two mens.
5. Sheep eat grass.
6. David is married and has three childs.
7. Most of my friend are student.
8. He put on his pyjama and went to bed.
9. We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish.
10. Do you know many persons in this town?
11. The town centre is usually full of tourist.
12. I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them.
13. This scissor isn't very sharp.

66.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

1. It's a nice place. Many people __________ there on holiday.
2. Some people __________ always late.
3. The new city hall is not a beautiful building. Most people __________ like it.
4. A lot of people __________ TV every day.
5. Three people __________ injured in the accident.
6. How many people __________ in that house?
7. __________ the police know the cause of the explosion?
8. The police __________ looking for the stolen car.
9. I need my glasses, but I can't find __________
10. I'm going to buy __________ new jeans today.

go or goes?
is or are?
don't or doesn't?
watch or watches?
was or were?
live or lives?
Do or Does?
is or are?
it or them?
a or some?
A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

**Countable nouns**

For example: (a) *car*  (a) *man*  (a) *bottle*  (a) *house*  (a) *key*  (an) *idea*  (an) *accident*

You can use *one/two/three* (etc.) + *countable nouns* (you can count them):

- one *bottle*
- two *bottles*
- three *men*
- four *houses*

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>a car</em></td>
<td><em>the car</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>cars</em></td>
<td><em>two cars</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- I’ve got *a car*.
- New *cars* are very expensive.
- There aren’t *many cars* in the car park.

You can’t use the singular (*car/bottle/key* etc.) alone. You need *a/an*:

- We can’t get into the house without *a key*. *(not without key)*

**Uncountable nouns**

For example: *water*  *air*  *rice*  *salt*  *plastic*  *money*  *music*  *tennis*

You can’t say *one/two/three* (etc.) + these things: *one water*  *two musics*

Uncountable nouns have only one form:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>money</th>
<th>the <em>money</em></th>
<th><em>my money</em></th>
<th><em>some money</em></th>
<th><em>much money</em></th>
<th>etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
- I’ve got *some money*.
- There isn’t *much money* in the box.
- *Money* isn’t everything.

You can’t use *a/an* + *uncountable nouns*: *x money*  *x music*  *x water*

But you can say *a piece of* ... / *a bottle of* ... etc. + *uncountable noun*:

- *a bottle of water*
- *a carton of milk*
- *a bar of chocolate*
- *a piece of cheese*
- *a bottle of perfume*
- *a piece of music*
- *a bowl of rice*
- *a cup of coffee*
- *a game of tennis*
Exercises

67.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write a/an if necessary. The names of these things are:

- bucket
- envelope
- money
- sand
- toothbrush
- wallet
- jug
- spoon
- toothpaste
- water

67.2 Some of these sentences are OK, but some need a/an. Write a/an where necessary.

1. I don't have watch. ___ a watch
2. Do you like cheese? OK
3. I never wear hat. __
4. Are you looking for job? ___
5. Kate doesn't eat meat. ___
6. Kate eats apple every day. ___
7. I'm going to party tonight. ___
8. Music is wonderful thing. ___
9. Jamaica is island. ___
10. I don't need key. ___
11. Everybody needs food. ___
12. I've got good idea. ___
13. Can you drive car? ___
14. Do you want cup of coffee? ___
15. I don't like coffee without milk. ___
16. Don't go out without umbrella. ___

67.3 What are these things? Write a ... of ... for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

- milk
- glass
- piece
- chocolate
- paper
- water
- soup
- wood

1. a carton of milk
2. ___
3. ___
4. ___
5. ___
6. ___
7. ___
8. ___
9. ___
a cake / some cake / some cakes
(countable/uncountable 2)

a/an and some

a/an + singular countable nouns (car/apple/shoe etc.):
- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):
- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):
- I need some water.
- Would you like some cheese?
  (or Would you like a piece of cheese?)

Compare a and some:
- Nicola bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, made some phone calls, and listened to some music.

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:

Compare a paper (= a newspaper) and some paper:
- I want something to read. I'm going to buy a paper.
- but I want to make a shopping list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (not a paper)

Be careful with:

advice  bread  furniture  hair  information  news  weather  work

These nouns are usually uncountable. So you can't say a/an ... (a bread, an advice-), and they can't be plural (advices, furnitures etc.).
- Can I talk to you? I need some advice. (not an advice)
- I'm going to buy some bread. (not a bread)
- They've got some nice furniture in their house. (not furnitures)
- Silvia has very long hair. (not hairs)
- Where can I get some information about hotels here? (not informations)
- Listen! I've just had some good news. (not a good news)
- It's nice weather today. (not a nice weather)
- 'Do you like your job?' 'Yes, but it's hard work.' (not a hard work)

We say a job (but not a work):
- I've got a new job. (not a new work)

countable/uncountable 1 ➔ Unit 67    some and any ➔ Unit 76
Exercises

68.1 What can you see in these pictures? Use a or some.

1. some perfume, a hat and some shoes
2.
3.
4.

68.2 Write sentences with Would you like a ...? or Would you like some ...?

1. Would you like some cheese?
2. Would you like ?
3. Would ?

68.3 Write a/an or some.

1. I read a book and listened to some music.
2. I need money. I want to buy food.
3. We met interesting people at the party.
4. I'm going to open window to get fresh air.
5. Rachel didn't eat much for lunch - only apple and bread.
6. We live in big house. There's nice garden with beautiful trees.
7. I'm going to make a table. First I need wood.
8. Listen to me carefully. I'm going to give you advice.
9. I want to make a list of things to do. I need paper and pen.

68.4 Which is right?

1. I'm going to buy some new shoe/shoes. (shoes is right)
2. Mark has brown eye/eyes.
3. Paula has short black hair/hairs.
4. The tour guide gave us some information/informations about the city.
5. We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.
6. We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
7. It's hard to find a work/job at the moment.
8. We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on holiday.
a/an and the

**a/an**

- I've got **a car**. (there are many cars and I've got one)
- Can I ask a **question**? (there are many questions - can I ask one?)
- Is there **a hotel** near here? (there are many hotels - is there one near here?)
- Paris is an **interesting city**. (there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- Lisa is **a student**. (there are many students and Lisa is one)

**the**

- I'm going to clean **the car** tomorrow. (= my car)
- Can you repeat **the question**, please? (= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed our holiday. **The hotel** was very nice. (= our hotel)
- Paris is **the capital of France**. (there is only one capital of France)
- Lisa is **the youngest student** in her class. (there is only one youngest student in her class)

Compare *a* and *the*:

- I bought **a jacket** and **a shirt**. **The jacket** was cheap, but **the shirt** was expensive. (= the jacket and the shirt that I bought)

We say **the** ... when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

- **the door** / **the ceiling** / **the floor** / **the carpet** / **the light** etc. (of a room)
- **the roof** / **the garden** / **the kitchen** / **the bathroom** etc. (of a house)
- **the centre** / **the station** / **the airport** / **the town hall** etc. (of a town)

- 'Where's Tom? 'In **the kitchen**.' (= the kitchen of this house or flat)
- Turn off **the light** and close **the door**. (= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from **the centre**? (= the centre of your town)
- I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please. (= the manager of this shop etc.)
Exercises

69.1 Write a/an or the.

1. We enjoyed our trip. The hotel was very nice.
2. ‘Can I ask a question?’ ‘Sure. What do you want to know?’
3. You look very tired. You need a holiday.
4. ‘Where’s Tom?’ ‘He’s in the garden.’
5. Eve is an interesting person. You should meet her.
6. A: Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to the city centre?
   B: Yes, go straight on and then take the next turning left.
7. A: Shall we go out for dinner this evening?
   B: Yes, that’s a good idea.
8. It’s a nice morning. Let’s go for a walk.
9. Amanda is a student. When she finishes her studies, she wants to be an journalist. She lives with two friends in an apartment near the college where she is studying. The apartment is small, but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old, and the girl is three. Peter works in a factory. Mary doesn’t have a job at the moment.

69.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + these words:

airport  cup  dictionary  door  floor  picture

1. Can you open the door, please?
2. How far is it to the airport?
3. Can I have a cup of coffee, please?
4. That’s a nice dictionary – I like it.
5. Can you pass me the floor, please?
6. Why are you sitting on the picture?

69.3 These sentences are not correct. Put in a/an or the where necessary.

1. Don’t forget to turn off the light when you go out.
2. Enjoy your trip, and don’t forget to send me a postcard.
3. What is name of this village?
4. Canada is a very big country.
5. What is largest city in Canada?
6. I like this room, but I don’t like colour of carpet.
7. ‘Are you OK?’ ‘No, I’ve got headache.’
8. We live in an old house near the station.
9. What is name of director of film we saw last night?
the ...

We use the when it is clear which thing or person we mean:

- What is the name of this street? (there is only one name)
- Who is the best player in your team? (there is only one best player)
- Can you tell me the time, please? (= the time now)
- My office is on the first floor. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget the:
- Do you live near the city centre? (not near city centre)
- Excuse me, where is the nearest bank? (not where is nearest ...)

the same ...

- We live in the same street. (not in same street)
- 'Are these two books different? 'No, they're the same.' (not they're same)

We say:

- the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the country
  - The sky is blue and the sun is shining.
  - Do you live in a town or in the country?

- the police / the fire brigade / the army (of a city, country etc.)
  - My brother is a soldier. He's in the army.
  - What do you think of the police? Do they do a good job?

- the top / the end / the middle / the left etc.
  - Write your name at the top of the page.
  - My house is at the end of the street.
  - The table is in the middle of the room.
  - Do you drive on the right or on the left in your country?

- (play) the piano / the guitar / the trumpet etc. (musical instruments)
  - Paula is learning to play the piano.

- the radio
  - I listen to the radio a lot.

- the internet
  - What do you use the internet for?

We do not use the with:

- television / TV
  - I watch TV a lot.
  - What's on television tonight?
  - but Can you turn off the TV? (= the TV set)

- breakfast / lunch / dinner
  - What did you have for breakfast? (not the breakfast)
  - Dinner is ready!

- next / last + week/month/year/summer/Monday etc.
  - I'm not working next week. (not the next week)
  - Did you have a holiday last summer? (not the last summer)
Exercises

70.1 Put in the where necessary. Write ‘OK’ if the sentence is already correct.

1 What is name of this street? ..................................................................................................................................................
   The name .................................................................................................................................................................

2 What’s on TV tonight?  OK ........................................................................................................................................

3 Our apartment is on second floor. ................................................................................................................................

4 Would you like to go to moon? ................................................................................................................................

5 Which is best hotel in this town? ................................................................................................................................

6 What time is lunch? ........................................................................................................................................................

7 How far is it to city centre? ........................................................................................................................................

8 We’re going away at end of May. ................................................................................................................................

9 What are you doing next weekend? ................................................................................................................................

10 I didn’t like her first time I met her. ................................................................................................................................

11 I’m going out after dinner. ........................................................................................................................................

12 It’s easy to get information from internet. ...................................................................................................................

13 My sister got married last month. ................................................................................................................................

14 My dictionary is on top shelf on right. .......................................................................................................................

15 We live in country about ten miles from nearest town. ................................................................................................

70.2 Complete the sentences. Use the same + these words:

age  colour  problem  street  time

1 I live in North Street and you live in North Street. We live in the same street. ..............................................................

2 I arrived at 8.30 and you arrived at 8.30. We arrived at ..............................................................................................

3 James is 25 and Sue is 25. James and Sue are ..............................................................................................................

4 My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are ..................................................................................

5 I have no money and you have no money. We have .....................................................................................................

70.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the if necessary.

1 The sun is shining.
2 She’s playing ...
3 They’re having ...
4 He’s watching ...
5 They’re swimming in ....
6 Tom’s name is at .........................of the list.

70.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

capital - dinner - police - lunch - middle - name - sky - TV

1 We had dinner at a restaurant last night.
2 We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don’t remember ..............................................................................................
3 ..................................................................................................................................................................................
2
4 Sometimes there are some good films on .............................................................................................. late at night.
5 Somebody was trying to break into the shop, so I called .............................................................................................
6 Tokyo is ...................................................................................................................................................................
7 ‘What did you have for ..................................................................?’ ‘A salad.’
8 I woke up in .................................................................................................................. of the night.
go to work  go home  go to the cinema

We say:

(go) to work, (be) at work, start work, finish work
  □ Bye! I'm going to work now. (not to the work)
  □ I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) to school, (be) at school, start school, leave school etc.
  □ What did you learn at school today? (not at the school)
  □ Some children don't like school.

(go) to university/college, (be) at university/college
  □ Helen wants to go to university when she leaves school.
  □ What did you study at college?

(go) to hospital, (be) in hospital
  □ Jack had an accident. He had to go to hospital.

(go) to prison, (be) in prison
  □ Why is he in prison? What did he do?

(go) to church, (be) in/at church
  □ David usually goes to church on Sundays.

(go) to bed, (be) in bed
  □ I'm tired. I'm going to bed. (not to the bed)
  □ 'Where's Alice?' 'She's in bed.'

(go) home, (be) at home etc.
  □ I'm tired. I'm going home. (not to home)
  □ Are you going out tonight, or are you staying at home?

We say:

(go to) the cinema / the theatre / the bank / the post office / the station / the airport / the city centre
  □ I never go to the theatre, but I go to the cinema a lot.
  □ 'Are you going to the bank?' 'No, to the post office.'
  □ The number 5 bus goes to the airport; the number 8 goes to the city centre.

(go to) the doctor, the dentist
  □ You're not well. Why don't you go to the doctor?
  □ I have to go to the dentist tomorrow.
Exercises

71.1 Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1 He’s in bed.
2 They’re at ...........................................
3 She’s in ...........................................
4 She’s at ...........................................
5 They’re at ...........................................
6 He’s in ...........................................

71.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use the if necessary.

bank  bed  church  home  post office  school  station

1 I need to change some money. I have to go to the bank.
2 David usually goes to church on Sundays.
3 In Britain, children go to school from the age of five.
4 There were a lot of people at the station waiting for the train.
5 We went to their house, but they weren’t at home.
6 I’m going to the bank now. Goodnight!
7 I’m going to the post office to get some stamps.

71.3 Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need the.

1 If you want to catch a plane, you go to the airport.
2 If you want to see a film, you go to the cinema.
3 If you are tired and you want to sleep, you go to bed.
4 If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you go to prison.
5 If you have a problem with your teeth, you go to the dentist.
6 If you want to study after you leave school, you go to university.
7 If you are badly injured in an accident, you go to hospital.

71.4 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

1 We went to cinema last night.
2 I finish work at 5 o’clock every day.
3 Lisa wasn’t feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor.
4 I wasn’t feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed.
5 Why is Angela always late for work?
6 ‘Where are your children?’ ‘They’re at school.’
7 We have no money in bank.
8 When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
9 What time do you usually get home from work?
10 Do you live far from city centre?
11 ‘Where shall we meet?’ ‘At station.’
12 James is ill. He’s in hospital.
13 Kate takes her children to school every day.
14 Would you like to go to university?
15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening?
We do not use the for general ideas:
- I like music, especially classical music. (not the music ... the classical music)
- We don’t eat meat very often. (not the meat)
- Life is not possible without water. (not The life ... the water)
- I hate exams. (not the exams)
- Is there a shop near here that sells newspapers?

We do not use the for games and sports:
- My favourite sports are football and skiing. (not the football ... the skiing)

We do not use the for languages or school subjects (history/geography/physics/biology etc.):
- Do you think English is difficult? (not the English)
- Tom’s brother is studying physics and chemistry.

**flowers or the flowers?**

Compare:

- **Flowers** are beautiful. (= flowers in general)
- I don’t like **cold weather**. (= cold weather in general)
- We don’t eat **fish** very often. (= fish in general)
- Are you interested in **history**? (= history in general)

- **I love this garden. The flowers** are beautiful. (= the flowers in this garden)
- **The weather** isn’t very good today. (= the weather today)
- We had a great meal last night. **The fish** was excellent. (= the fish we ate last night)
- Do you know much about **the history** of your country?
Exercises

What do you think about these things?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>big cities</th>
<th>computer games</th>
<th>exams</th>
<th>jazz</th>
<th>parties</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>chocolate</td>
<td>dogs</td>
<td>housework</td>
<td>museums</td>
<td>tennis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Choose seven of these things and write sentences with:

I like ... I don't like ... I love ... I hate ... or ... is/are all right

1. I hate exams, or I like exams, or Exams are all right. (etc.)

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in ... I know a lot about ... I don't know much about ...
I'm not interested in ... I know a little about ... I don't know anything about ...

1. (history) I'm very interested in history.

2. (politics)

3. (sport)

4. (art)

5. (astronomy)

6. (economics)

Which is right?

1. My favourite sport is football / the football. (football is right)
2. I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. (The rooms is right)
3. Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4. Jane doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5. I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
6. 'Where's milk / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
7. I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8. 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play basketball / the basketball.'
9. An architect is a person who designs buildings / the buildings.
10. We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
11. I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12. Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13. I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14. Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15. Houses / The houses in this street are all the same.
16. I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
17. I enjoy taking pictures / the pictures. It's my hobby.
18. Do you want to see pictures / the pictures that I took when I was on holiday?
19. English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
20. Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.
the ... (names of places)

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of places:
- France is a very large country. (not the France)
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.
- Peru is in South America.

But we use the in names with ‘republic’/‘states’/‘kingdom’:
- the Czech Republic
- the United States of America (the USA)
- the United Kingdom (the UK)

the -s (plural names)

We use the with plural names of countries/islands/mountains:
- the Netherlands
- the Canary Islands
- the Philippines
- the Alps

Seas, rivers etc.

We use the with names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:
- the Atlantic (Ocean)
- the Mediterranean (Sea)
- the Nile (River)
- the Suez Canal
- the Amazon
- the Black Sea

Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do not use the with names of streets, squares etc.:
- Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- Where is Highfield Road, please?
- Times Square is in New York.

We do not use the with names of airports, stations and many other important buildings:
- Kennedy Airport
- Westminster Abbey
- London Zoo
- Victoria Station
- Edinburgh Castle
also
- Cambridge University, Harvard University etc.

But we use the with names of most hotels, museums, theatres and cinemas:
- the Regent Hotel
- the National Theatre
- the Science Museum
- the Odeon (cinema)

the ... of ...

We use the + names with ... of ... :
- the Museum of Modern Art
- the Great Wall of China
- the University of California
- the Tower of London

We say the north / the south / the east / the west (of ...):
- I’ve been to the north of Italy, but not to the south.
Exercises

73.1 Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use The if necessary.

1 Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
2 The Atlantic is between Africa and America.
3 is a country in northern Europe.
4 is a river in South America.
5 is the largest continent in the world.
6 is the largest ocean.
7 is a river in Europe.
8 is a country in East Africa.
9 is between Canada and Mexico.
10 are mountains in South America.
11 is the capital of Thailand.
12 are mountains in central Europe.
13 is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14 is an island in the Caribbean.
15 are a group of islands near Florida.

73.2 Write the where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write OK.

1 Kevin lives in Newton Street. OK
2 We went to see a play at National Theatre.
3 Have you ever been to China?
4 Have you ever been to Philippines?
5 Have you ever been to south of France?
6 Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is?
7 Can you tell me where Merrion Street is?
8 Can you tell me where Museum of Art is?
9 Europe is bigger than Australia.
10 Belgium is smaller than Netherlands.
11 Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile?
12 Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London?
13 We stayed at Park Hotel in Hudson Road.
14 How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station (in London)?
15 Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16 Texas is famous for oil and cowboys.
17 I hope to go to United States next year.
18 Mary comes from west of Ireland.
19 Alan is a student at Manchester University.
20 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean.

Additional exercises 33–34 (pages 269–70)
### this/that/these/those

**this** *(singular)*

- Do you like this picture?

**these** *(plural)*

- These flowers are for you.

**that** *(singular)*

- Do you like that picture?

**those** *(plural)*

- Who are those people?

---

**We use** this/that/these/those **with a noun** *(this picture / those girls etc.) or without a noun:**

- With a noun:
  - This hotel is expensive, but it’s very nice.
  - Who’s that girl? ‘I don’t know.’
  - Do you like these shoes? I bought them last week.
  - Those apples look nice. Can I have one?

- Without a noun:
  - This is a nice hotel, but it’s very expensive.
  - ‘Excuse me, is this your bag?’ ‘Oh yes, thank you.’
  - Who’s that? (= Who is that person?)
  - Which shoes do you prefer – these or those?

**that = something that has happened:**

- ‘I’m sorry I forgot to phone you.’ ‘That’s all right.’
- That was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

**that = what somebody has just said:**

- ‘You’re a teacher, aren’t you?’ ‘Yes, that’s right.’
- ‘Martin has a new job.’ ‘Really? I didn’t know that.’
- ‘I’m going on holiday next week.’ ‘Oh, that’s nice.’

---

**We use this is … and is that … ? on the phone:**

- Hi Sarah, this is David. *(this = the speaker)*
- Is that Sarah? *(that = the other person)*

**We use this is … to introduce people:**

- A: Ben, this is Chris.
  - B: Hello, Chris – nice to meet you.
  - C: Hi.

---

**We use this one / that one** → Unit 75
Exercises

74.1 Complete the sentences. Use this/that/these/those + these words:

birds  house  plates  postcards  seat  shoes

1. Do you like these shoes?
2. Who lives in …………?
3. How much are …………?
4. Look at …………
5. Excuse me, is ………… free?
6. ………… are dirty.

74.2 Write questions: Is this/that your … ? or Are these/those your … ?

1. Is this your bag?
2. …………
3. …………
4. …………
5. …………
6. …………
7. …………
8. …………
9. …………
10. …………

74.3 Complete the sentences with this is or that’s or that.

1. A: I’m sorry I’m late.
   B: That’s all right.
2. A: I can’t come to the party tomorrow.
   B: Oh, ………… a pity. Why not?
3. on the phone
   SUE: Hello, Jane. ………… Sue.
   JANE: Oh, hi Sue. How are you?
   B: ………… not true!
5. A: Beth plays the piano very well.
   B: Does she? I didn’t know …………
6. Mark meets Paul’s sister, Helen.
   PAUL: Mark, ………… my sister, Helen.
   MARK: Hi, Helen.
7. A: I’m sorry I was angry yesterday.
   B: ………… OK. Forget it!
8. A: You’re a friend of Tom’s, aren’t you?
   B: Yes, ………… right.
one/ones

one (= a ...)

These chocolates are good. Would you like one?

Would you like one? = Would you like a chocolate?

one = a/an ... (a chocolate / an apple etc.)

I need a pen. Do you have one? (one = a pen)

A: Is there a bank near here?

B: Yes, there’s one at the end of this street. (one = a bank)

one and ones

one (singular)

Which one do you want?

Which one? = Which hat?

one = hat/car/girl etc.

this one / that one

Which car is yours? This one or that one? (= this car or that car)

the one ...

A: Which hotel did you stay at?

B: The one opposite the station.

I found this key. Is it the one you lost?

the ... one

I don’t like the black coat, but I like the brown one.

Don’t buy that camera. Buy the other one.

a/an ... one

This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?

That biscuit was nice. I’m going to have another one.

ones (plural)

Which ones do you want?

Which ones? = Which flowers?

ones = flowers/cars/girls etc.

don’t use these/those + or + these ones / those ones

Which flowers do you want? These or those? or These ones or those ones?

the ones ...

A: Which books are yours?

B: The ones on the table.

I found these keys. Are they the ones you lost?

the ... ones

I don’t like the red shoes, but I like the green ones.

Don’t buy those apples. Buy the other ones.

some ... ones

These cups are dirty. Can we have some clean ones?

My shoes are very old. I’m going to buy some new ones.
### Exercises

#### 75.1
A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B’s answers. Use one (not a/an ...) in the answers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information in the box</th>
<th>B’s answers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B doesn’t need a car</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there’s a chemist in Mill Road</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B has just had a cup of coffee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B is going to get a bike</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B doesn’t have a pen</td>
<td>B: I don’t have one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B doesn’t have an umbrella</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A: Can you lend me a pen?  
   B: I’m sorry, I don’t have one.

2 A: Would you like to have a car?  
   B: No, I don’t.

3 A: Do you have a bike?  
   B: No, but I’m going to get one.

4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella?  
   B: I’m sorry, but I don’t have one.

5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee?  
   B: No, thank you.

6 A: Is there a chemist near here?  
   B: Yes, there’s one in Mill Road.

#### 75.2
Complete the sentences. Use a/an ... one. Use the words in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comparison words</th>
<th>Sentence examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>better</td>
<td>This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big</td>
<td>I’m going to sell my car and buy a big one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean</td>
<td>That’s not a very good photo, but this is a clean one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different</td>
<td>I want today’s newspaper. This is a different one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>This box is too small. I need a new one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let’s go to a new one.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 75.3
A is talking to B. Use the information to complete the conversations. Use one/ones.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>A's statement</th>
<th>A's question</th>
<th>B's response</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1      | A stayed at a hotel. It was opposite the station.  
         A: We stayed at a hotel.  
         B: Which one?  
         A: The one opposite the station.  |
| 2      | A sees some shoes in a shop window. They’re green.  
         A: I like those shoes.  
         B: Which ones?  
         A: The green ones.  |
| 3      | A is looking at a house. It has a red door.  
         A: That’s a nice house.  
         B: Which one?  
         A: The one with a red door.  |
| 4      | A is looking at some CDs. They’re on the top shelf.  
         A: Are those your CDs?  
         B: Which ones?  
         A: The ones on the top shelf.  |
| 5      | A is looking at a jacket in a shop. It’s black.  
         A: Do you like that jacket?  
         B: Which one?  
         A: The black one.  |
| 6      | A is looking at a picture. It’s on the wall.  
         A: That’s an interesting picture.  
         B: Which one?  
         A: The one on the wall.  |
| 7      | A sees a girl in a group of people. She’s tall with long hair.  
         A: Do you know that girl?  
         B: Which one?  
         A: The one with long hair.  |
| 8      | A is looking at some flowers in the garden. They’re yellow.  
         A: Those flowers are beautiful.  
         B: Which ones?  
         A: The yellow ones.  |
| 9      | A is looking at a man in a restaurant. He has a moustache and glasses.  
         A: Who’s that man?  
         B: Which one?  
         A: The one with glasses.  |
| 10     | A took some photos at the party last week.  
         A: Did I show you my photos?  
         B: Which ones?  
         A: The ones from the party.  |
some and any

Use **some** in positive sentences:
- I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- There's **some** milk in the fridge.
- We made **some** mistakes.

Use **any** in negative sentences:
- I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- There **isn't** **any** milk in the fridge.
- We **didn't** make **any** mistakes.

any and some in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (**not** **some**):
- Is there **any** milk in the fridge?
- Does he have **any** friends?
- Do you need **any** help?

We normally use **some** (**not** **any**) when we offer things (Would you like ... ?):
- A: Would you like **some** coffee?
  B: Yes, please.

or when we ask for things (Can I have ... ? etc.):
- A: Can I have **some** soup, please?
  B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me **some** money?
  B: Sure. How much do you need?

some and any without a noun

- I didn't take any pictures, but Jessica took **some**. (= some pictures)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- I've just made some coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- 'Where's your luggage?'  'I don't have **any**.' (= any luggage)
- 'Are there any biscuits?'  'Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen.' (= some biscuits)

something / somebody (or someone)
- She said **something**.
- I saw **somebody** (or **someone**).
- Would you like **something** to eat?
- **Somebody**'s at the door.

anything / anybody (or anyone)
- She **didn't** say **anything**
- I **didn't** see **anybody** (or **anyone**).
- Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- Where's Sue? Has **anybody** seen her?
Exercises

76.1 Write some or any.

1 I bought some cheese, but I didn’t buy any bread.
2 In the middle of the room there was a table and some chairs.
3 There aren’t any shops in this part of town.
4 Gary and Alice don’t have any children.
5 Do you have any brothers or sisters?
6 There are some beautiful flowers in the garden.
7 ‘Would you like some tea?’ ‘Yes, please.’
8 When we were on holiday, we visited some interesting places.
9 Don’t buy any rice. We don’t need any.
10 I went out to buy some bananas, but they didn’t have any in the shop.
11 I’m thirsty. Can I have any water, please?

76.2 Complete the sentences. Use some or any + the words in the box.

air cheese help milk questions
batteries friends languages pictures shampoo

1 I want to wash my hair. Is there any shampoo?
2 The police want to talk to you. They want to ask you some questions.
3 I had my camera, but I didn’t take any pictures.
4 Do you speak any foreign languages?
5 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with some of mine.
6 Can I have some milk in my coffee, please?
7 The radio isn’t working. There aren’t any batteries in it.
8 It’s hot in this office. I’m going out for some fresh air.
9 A: Would you like some coffee?
   B: No, thank you. I’ve had enough to eat.
10 I can do this job alone. I don’t need any help.

76.3 Complete the sentences. Use some or any.

1 Kate didn’t take any pictures, but she took some. (I/take)
2 ‘Where’s your luggage?’ ‘I don’t have any.’ (I/not have)
3 ‘Do you need any money?’ ‘No, thank you.’ (I/have)
4 ‘Can you lend me some money?’ ‘I’m sorry, but I don’t have any.’ (I/not have)
5 The tomatoes in the shop didn’t look very good, so I didn’t buy any.
6 There were some nice oranges in the shop, so I bought some.
7 ‘How much coffee did you drink yesterday?’ ‘I didn’t drink any.’ (I/not drink)

76.4 Write something/somebody or anything/anybody.

1 A woman stopped me and said something, but I didn’t understand.
2 ‘What’s wrong?’ ‘There’s something in my eye.’
3 Do you know anything about politics?
4 I went to the shop, but I didn’t buy anything.
5 Somebody has broken the window. I don’t know who.
6 There isn’t anything in the bag. It’s empty.
7 I’m looking for my keys. Has anybody seen them?
8 Would you like anything to drink?
9 I didn’t eat anything because I wasn’t hungry.
10 This is a secret. Please don’t tell anybody.
not (-n’t) + any
- There aren’t any cars in the car park.
- Tracey and Jack don’t have any children.
- You can have some coffee, but I don’t want any.

no + noun (no cars / no garden etc.)
- There are no cars in the car park. (= there aren’t any cars)
- We have no coffee. (= we don’t have any coffee)
- It’s a nice house, but there’s no garden. (= there isn’t a garden)

We use no ... especially after have and there is/are.

negative verb + any = positive verb + no
- They don’t have any children. or They have no children.
- (not They don’t have no children)
- There isn’t any sugar in your coffee. or There’s no sugar in your coffee.

no and none

Use no + noun (no money / no children etc.):
- We have no money.
- Everything was OK. There were no problems.

Use none alone (without a noun):
- ‘How much money do you have?’ ‘None.’ (= no money)
- ‘Were there any problems?’ ‘No, none.’ (= no problems)

none and no-one

none = 0 (zero)
no-one = nobody

None is an answer for How much? / How many? (things or people):
- A: How much money do you have?
  B: None. (= no money)
- A: How many people did you meet?
  B: None. (= no people)

No-one is an answer for Who?:
- A: Who did you meet?
  B: No-one. (or Nobody.)
Exercises

77.1 Write these sentences again with no.
1. We don't have any money. We have no money.
2. There aren't any shops near here. There are
3. Carla doesn't have any free time.
4. There isn't a light in this room.

Write these sentences again with any.
5. We have no money. We don't have any money.
6. There's no milk in the fridge.
7. There are no buses today.
8. Tom has no brothers or sisters.

77.2 Write no or any.
1. There's sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married, but he doesn't have children.
3. Sue doesn't speak foreign languages.
4. I'm afraid there's coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see birds.'
6. 'Do you know where Jessica is?' 'No, I have idea.'

Write no, any or none.
7. There aren't pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold, but there was wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have in the shop.
10. Everything was correct. There were mistakes.
11. 'How much luggage do you have?' 'I have .'
12. 'How much luggage do you have?' 'I don't have .'

77.3 Complete the sentences. Use any or no + the words in the box.

difference friends furniture heating idea
money problems questions queue

1. Everything was OK. There were no problems.
2. Jack and Emily would like to go on holiday, but they have
3. I'm not going to answer .
4. He's always alone. He has .
5. There is between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6. There wasn't in the room. It was completely empty.
7. 'Do you know how the accident happened?' 'No, I have .'
8. The house is cold because there isn't .
9. We didn't have to wait to get our train tickets. There was .

77.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use none where necessary.

1. How many letters did you write yesterday? Two. or A lot. or None.
2. How many sisters do you have?
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday?
4. How many photos have you taken today?
5. How many legs does a snake have?
not + anybody/anyone/anything
nobody/no-one/nothing

(for people)

- There isn’t anybody in the room.
- There is nobody in the room.
- A: Who is in the room? B: Nobody. / No-one.

-anybody and -one are the same:
anybody = anyone nobody = no-one

(for things)

- There isn’t anything in the bag.
- There is nothing in the bag.

not + anything

I don’t know anybody (or anyone) here.

nobody = not + anybody
no-one = not + anyone

I’m lonely. I have nobody to talk to. (= I don’t have anybody)
The house is empty. There is no-one in it. (= There isn’t anyone in it.)

nothing = not + anything

She said nothing. (= She didn’t say anything.)
There’s nothing to eat. (= There isn’t anything to eat.)

You can use nobody/no-one/nothing at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):

The house is empty. Nobody lives there.
‘Who did you speak to?’ ‘No-one.’

Nothing happened.
‘What did you say?’ ‘Nothing’

Remember:

negative verb + anybody/anyone/anything
positive verb + nobody/no-one/nothing

He doesn’t know anything. (not He doesn’t know nothing)
Don’t tell anybody. (not Don’t tell nobody)
There is nothing to do in this town. (not There isn’t nothing)
Exercises

78.1 Write these sentences again with nobody/no-one or nothing.

1 There isn't anything in the bag. There's nothing in the bag.
2 There isn't anybody in the office. There wasn't anybody in the office.
3 I don't have anything to do. I don't have anything to do.
4 There isn't anything on TV. There wasn't anything on TV.
5 There wasn't anyone at home. There wasn't anyone at home.
6 We didn't find anything. We didn't find anything.

78.2 Write these sentences again with anybody/anyone or anything.

1 There's nothing in the bag. There isn't anything in the bag.
2 There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't anybody on the bus.
3 I have nothing to read. I have nothing to read.
4 I have no-one to help me. I have no-one to help me.
5 She heard nothing. She heard nothing.
6 We have nothing for dinner. We have nothing for dinner.

78.3 Answer these questions with nobody/no-one or nothing.

1a What did you say? Nothing.
2a Who saw you? Nobody.
3a What do you want? Nothing.
4a Who did you meet? Nobody.
5a Who knows the answer? Nobody.
6a What did you buy? Nothing.
7a What happened? Nothing.
8a Who was late? Nobody.

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.

Use nobody/no-one/nothing or anybody/anyone/anything:

1b I didn't say anything.
2b Nobody saw me.
3b I don't have anything to eat.
4b I have nothing to eat.
5b Nobody knows the answer.
6b I wasn't hungry.
7b Helen was sitting alone. She wasn't with anybody.
8b I'm afraid I can't help you. There's nothing I can do.

78.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

nobody / no-one / nothing or anybody / anyone / anything

1 That house is empty. Nobody lives there.
2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember anything.
3 Be quiet! Don't say anything.
4 I didn't know about the meeting. Somebody told me.
5 'What did you have to eat?' 'I wasn't hungry.'
6 I didn't eat anything. I wasn't hungry.
7 Helen was sitting alone. She wasn't with anybody.
8 I'm afraid I can't help you. There's nothing I can do.
9 I don't know anything about car engines.
10 The museum is free. It doesn't cost anything to go in.
11 I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was nobody there.
12 The hotel receptionist spoke very fast. I didn't understand anything.
13 'What are you doing tonight?' 'Why?'
14 Sophie has gone away. Somebody knows where she is. She didn't tell anybody where she was going.
somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

**Somebody (or Someone) has broken the window.**

**She has got something in her mouth.**

**Tom lives somewhere near London.**

**-body and -one are the same: somebody = someone, nobody = no-one etc.**

**people (-body or -one)**

- **There is somebody (or someone) at the door.**
- **Is there anybody (or anyone) at the door?**
- **There isn’t anybody (or anyone) at the door.**
- **There is nobody (or no-one) at the door.**

**things (-thing)**

- **Lucy said something but I didn’t understand what she said.**
- **Are you doing anything at the weekend?**
- **I was angry, but I didn’t say anything.**
- **‘What did you say?’ ‘Nothing.’**

**places (-where)**

- **Ruth’s parents live somewhere in the south of England.**
- **Did you go anywhere interesting for your holidays?**
- **I’m staying here. I’m not going anywhere.**
- **I don’t like this town. There is nowhere to go.**

**something/anybody etc. + adjective (big/cheap/interesting etc.)**

- **Did you meet anybody interesting at the party?**
- **We always go to the same place. Let’s go somewhere different.**
- **‘What’s that letter?’ ‘It’s nothing important.’**

**something/anybody etc. + to ...**

- **I’m hungry. I want something to eat. (= something that I can eat)**
- **Tony doesn’t have anybody to talk to. (= anybody that he can talk to)**
- **There is nowhere to go in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)**

**some and any **→** Unit 76  any and no → Unit 77  anybody/nothing etc. → Unit 78  everything/-body/-where → Unit 80**
Exercises

79.1 Write somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.

1 Lucy said something.
2 I’ve lost something.
3 Sue and Tom went somewhere.
4 I’m going to phone somewhere.

What did she say? What have you lost? Where did they go? Who are you going to phone?

79.2 Write nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere.

1a What did you say? 2a Where are you going? 3a What do you want? 4a Who are you looking for?

Nothing.

Now answer the same questions with full sentences.

Use not + anybody/anything/anywhere.

1b I didn’t say anything. 3b ................................................
2b I’m not .............................................................................
4b .............................................................

79.3 Write somebody/anything/nowhere etc.

1 It’s dark. I can’t see anything.
2 Tom lives somewhere near London.
3 Do you know something about computers?
4 ‘Listen!’ ‘What? I can’t hear anything.’
5 ‘What are you doing here?’ ‘I’m waiting for something.’
6 We need to talk. There’s something I want to tell you.
7 ‘Did you see the accident?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’
8 We weren’t hungry, so we didn’t eat anything.
9 ‘What’s going to happen?’ ‘I don’t know. Nobody knows.’
10 ‘Do you know anyone in Paris?’ ‘Yes, a few people.’
11 ‘What’s in that cupboard?’ ‘Nothing. It’s empty.’
12 I’m looking for my glasses. I can’t find them anywhere.
13 I don’t like cold weather. I want to live somewhere warm.
14 Is there something interesting on TV tonight?
15 Have you ever met anyone famous?

79.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>something</th>
<th>anything</th>
<th>nothing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>something</td>
<td>anywhere</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>park</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 We don’t go out very much because there’s nowhere to go.
2 There isn’t any food in the house. We don’t have anything.
3 I’m bored. I’ve got nothing to do.
4 ‘Why are you standing?’ ‘Because there isn’t anywhere to go.’
5 ‘Would you like something to eat?’ ‘Yes, please – a glass of water.’
6 If you’re going to the city centre, take the bus. Don’t drive because there’s nowhere to go.

7 I want to sit in London. I’m going to buy a magazine.
8 I need something in London. Can you recommend a hotel?
every and all

**every**

We use *every* + *singular noun* (*every house / every country* etc.):
- Sarah has been to *every country* in Europe.
- *Every summer* we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different *every time* I see her.

Use a *singular verb* after *every* ...

- *Every house* in the street *is the same*. (*not are the same*)
- *Every country* has a national flag. (*not have*)

Compare *every* and *all*:

- *Every student* in the class passed the exam.
- *All the students* in the class passed the exam.
- *Every country* has a national flag.
- *All countries* have a national flag.

**every day and all day**

*every day* = on all days:

- It rained *every day* last week.
- Ben watches TV for about two hours *every evening*. (*= on all evenings*)

*all day* = the complete day:

- It rained *all day* yesterday.
- On Monday, I watched TV *all evening*. (*= the complete evening*)

also *every morning/night/summer* etc.

**everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere**

- *Everybody* (or *Everyone*) needs friends. (*= all people need friends*)
- Do you have *everything* you need? (*= all the things you need*)
- I lost my watch. I've looked *everywhere* for it. (*= I've looked in all places*)

Use a *singular verb* after *everybody/everyone/everything*:

- *Everybody* has problems. (*not Everybody have*)
Exercises

80.1 Complete the sentences. Use every + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>day</th>
<th>room</th>
<th>student</th>
<th>time</th>
<th>word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Every student in the class passed the exam. 1</td>
<td>My job is very boring. is the same. 2</td>
<td>Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins . 3</td>
<td>in the hotel has free internet access and a minibar. 4</td>
<td>‘Did you understand what she said?’ ‘Most of it, but not .’ 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

80.2 Complete the sentences with every day or all day.

1 Yesterday it rained all day.
2 I buy a newspaper, but sometimes I don't read it.
3 I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home all day.
4 I usually drink about four cups of coffee.
5 Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed all day.
6 I'm tired now because I've been working hard all day.
7 Last year we went to the seaside for a week, and it rained all day.

80.3 Write every or all.

1 Bill watches TV for about two hours every evening.
2 Julia gets up at 6.30 morning.
3 The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside afternoon.
4 I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away week.
5 a: How often do you go skiing?
   b: year. Usually in March.
6 a: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday?
   b: Yes, I was at home morning. I went out after lunch.
7 My sister loves new cars. She buys one year.
8 I saw Sam at the party, but he didn't speak to me evening.
9 We go away on holiday for two or three weeks summer.

80.4 Write everybody/everything/everywhere.

1 Everybody needs friends.
2 Chris knows about computers.
3 I like the people here. is very friendly.
4 This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and is very clean.
5 Kevin never uses his car. He goes by motorcycle.
6 Let's get something to eat. is hungry.
7 Sue's house is full of books. There are books .
8 You are right. you say is true.

80.5 Complete the sentences. Use one word only each time.

1 Everybody has problems.
2 Are you ready yet? Everybody waiting for you.
3 The house is empty. Everyone gone out.
4 Gary is very popular. Everybody him.
5 This town is completely different now. Everything changed.
6 I got home very late last night. I came in quietly because everyone asleep.
7 Everybody mistakes!
8 a: everything clear? everybody know what to do?
   b: Yes, we all understand.
Unit 81

### Compare:

**children/money/books etc.** (in general):
- Children like playing. (= children in general)
- Money isn’t everything. (= money in general)
- I enjoy reading books.
- Everybody needs friends.

**the children / the money / these books etc.**:
- Where are the children? (= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I don’t have the money. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read these books?
- I often go out with my friends.

### most / most of ..., some / some of ..., etc.

**most/some etc. + noun**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>children</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>books</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>money</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Most children like playing. (= children in general)
- I don’t want any money.
- Some books are better than others.
- He has no friends.
- All cities have the same problems. (= cities in general)

**most / some / any / no of ...**

- Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.
- I don’t want any money.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends live near me.

**You can say all the ... or all of the ...** (with or without of):
- All the students in our class passed the exam. (or All of the students ...)
- Amy has lived in London all her life. (or... all of her life.)

### all of it / most of them / none of us etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>all</th>
<th>most</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>none</th>
<th>of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>them</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- You can have some of this cake, but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?
  B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- Some of us are going out tonight. Why don’t you come with us?
- I have a lot of books, but I haven’t read any of them.
- ‘How many of these books have you read?’ ‘None of them.’
Exercises

81.1 Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (some/most etc.). Sometimes you need of (some of / most of etc.).

1. Most children like playing. (most)
2. Some of this money is yours. (some)
3. Some people never stop talking. (some)
4. The shops in the city centre close at 6:30. (most)
5. Most people have mobile phones these days. (most)
6. I don't like the pictures in the living room. (any)
7. He's lost his money. (all)
8. None of my friends are married. (none)
9. Do you know the people in this picture? (any)
10. Most birds can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed the film, but I didn't like the ending. (most)
12. Some sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can't find anywhere to stay. All the hotels are full. (all)
14. You must have this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained the time. (most)

81.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use:
all/most/some/none + of them / of it

1. How many of the people are women?
2. How many of the boxes are on the table?
3. How many of the men are wearing hats?
4. How many of the windows are open?
5. How many of the people are standing?
6. How much of the money is Ben's?

81.3 Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Most of children like playing. (Most children)
2. All the students failed the exam. (OK)
3. Some of people work too hard. (Some people)
4. Some of questions in the exam were very easy. (Some questions)
5. I haven't seen any of those people before. (Any of)
6. All of insects have six legs. (All of)
7. Have you read all these books? (Have you read)
8. Most of students in our class are very nice. (Most of)
9. Most of my friends are going to the party. (Most of)
10. I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night. (I was awake)
We use *both/either/neither* to talk about two things or people:

- **both**
- **either**
- **neither** (not + either)

A. **both**
- Rebecca has two children. Both are married. (*both* = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have either. (*either* = tea or coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre? B: Neither. I want to stay at home. (*neither* = not the cinema or the theatre)

Compare *either* and *neither*:

- "Would you like tea or coffee?"
- ‘*Either.* I don’t mind.’ (= tea or coffee)
- ‘I don’t want either.’ (*not* I don’t want neither)
- ‘*Neither.*’ (= not tea or coffee)

B. **both/either/neither + noun**

- **both** + plural
  - windows/books/children etc.
- **either** + singular
  - window/book/child etc.
- **neither**

- Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked both cities very much.
- First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. Neither job was very interesting.
- There are two ways from here to the station. You can go either way.

C. **both of ... / either of ... / neither of ...**

- **both** (of) **the ...**
- **either** of **these/those ...**
- **neither** of **my/your/Paul’s ...** etc.

- Neither of my parents is British.
- I haven’t read either of these books.

You can say **both of the/those/my ...** or **both the/those/my ...** (with or without **of**):

- I like both of those pictures. or I like both those pictures.
- Both of Paul’s sisters are married. or Both Paul’s sisters are married.

**but** Neither of Paul’s sisters is married. (not Neither Paul’s sisters)

D. **both of them / neither of us**

- **both**
- **either** of **them**
- **neither** of **us**
- you

- Paul has two sisters. Both of them are married.
- Sue and I didn’t eat anything. Neither of us was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don’t know either of them.
**Exercises**

82.1 Write *both/either/neither*. Use of where necessary.

1. Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both** cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn’t like **either of** them.
3. It was a good football match. **Neither** teams played well.
4. It wasn’t a good football match. **Either** team played well.
5. ‘Is your friend English or American?’ ‘**Neither**.’ She’s Australian.
6. We went away for two days, but the weather wasn’t good. It rained **neither** days.
7. A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?
   B: **Neither**. It doesn’t matter which one.
8. I invited Sam and Chris to the party, but **neither** of them came.
9. ‘Do you go to work by car or by bus?’ ‘**Both**. I always walk.’
10. ‘Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?’ ‘I don’t like **either** of them.’
11. ‘Do you work or are you a student?’ ‘**Both**. I work and I’m a student too.’
12. My friend and I went to the cinema, but **neither** of us liked the film. It was really bad.
13. Helen has two sisters and a brother. **Both** sisters are married.
14. Helen has two sisters and a brother. I’ve met her brother, but I haven’t met **neither** of her sisters.

82.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use *Both ... and Neither ...*.

1. **Both** cups are .................................................. empty.
2. .................................................. are open.
3. .................................................. wearing a hat.
4. .................................................. beards.
5. .................................................. to the airport.
6. .................................................. correct.

82.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with *Both/Neither of them ...*.

1. Are you married? No No 1
2. How old are you? 21 21 2
3. Are you a student? Yes Yes 3
4. Do you have a car? No No 4
6. Do you like cooking? Yes Yes 6
7. Can you play the piano? No No 7
8. Do you eat seafood? Yes Yes 8
9. Are you interested in sport? No No 9

Neither of them is married. 1
Both of them are 21. 2
Both of them are students. 3
Both of them have a car. 4
Both of them live in London. 5
Both of them like cooking. 6
Both of them can play the piano. 7
Both of them eat seafood. 8
Both of them are interested in sport. 9
We use **much** + **uncountable noun**
(much food / much money etc.):
- Did you buy **much food**?
- We don’t have **much luggage**.
- How **much money** do you want?
  - A: Do you have any **money**?
  - B: I have some, but **not much**.

We use **many** + **plural noun**
(many books / many people etc.):
- Did you buy **many books**?
- We don’t know **many people**.
- How **many photos** did you take?
  - A: Did you take any **photos**?
  - B: I took some, but **not many**.

We use **a lot of** + **both types of noun**:
- We bought **a lot of food**.
- Paula doesn’t have **a lot of free time**.

We say:
- There **is** a lot of food/money/water ...
  (singular verb)
- There **are** a lot of trees/shops/people ...
  (plural verb)
- A lot of people speak English.
  (not speaks)

We use **much** in questions and negative sentences:
- Do you drink **much coffee**?
- I don’t drink **much coffee**.

But we do not often use **much** in positive sentences:
- I drink **a lot of coffee**. (not I drink much coffee)
- ‘Do you drink much coffee?’ ‘Yes, **a lot**.’ (not Yes, much)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all types of sentences (positive/negative/question):
- We have **many friends** / **a lot of friends**.
- We don’t have **many friends** / **a lot of friends**.
- Do you have **many friends** / **a lot of friends**?

You can use **much** and **a lot** without a noun:
- Amy spoke to me, but she didn’t say **much**.
- ‘Do you watch TV **much**?’ ‘No, **not much**.’ (= not often)
- We like films, so we go to the cinema **a lot**. (not go to the cinema much)
- I don’t like him very **much**.
Exercises

83.1 Write much or many.
1. Did you buy much food?
2. There aren't many hotels in this town.
3. We don't have much petrol. We need to stop and get some.
4. Were there many people on the train?
5. Did many students fail the exam?
6. Paula doesn't have much money.
7. I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat much.
8. I don't know where Gary lives these days. I haven't seen him for many years.

Write How much or How many.
9. How much bread are coming to the party?
10. How many milk do you want in your coffee?
11. How much bread did you buy?
12. How many players are there in a football team?

83.2 Complete the sentences. Use much or many with these words:
- books  countries  luggage  people  time  times

1. I don't read very much. I don't have many books.
2. Hurry up! We don't have much time.
3. Do you travel a lot? Have you been to many countries?
4. Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know many people.
5. 'Do you have much money?' 'No, only this bag.'
6. I know Tokyo well. I've been there many times.

83.3 Complete the sentences. Use a lot of + these words:
- accidents  books  fun  interesting things  traffic

1. I like reading. I have a lot of books.
2. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw a lot of interesting things.
3. This road is very dangerous. There are a lot of accidents.
4. We enjoyed our holiday. We had a lot of fun.
5. It took me a long time to drive here. There was a lot of traffic.

83.4 In some of these sentences much is not natural. Change the sentences or write OK.

1. Do you drink much coffee? OK
2. I drink much tea.
3. It was a cold winter. We had much snow.
4. There wasn't much snow last winter.
5. It costs much money to travel around the world.
6. We had a cheap holiday. It didn't cost much.
7. Do you know much about computers?
8. 'Do you have any luggage?' 'Yes, much.'

83.5 Write sentences about these people. Use much and a lot.

1. James loves films. (go to the cinema)
2. Nicola thinks TV is boring. (watch TV)
3. Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis)
4. Mark doesn't like driving. (use his car)
5. Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out)
6. Sue has been all over the world. (travel)
### (a) little  (a) few

**A**

#### (a) little + uncountable noun:
- (a) little water
- (a) little time
- (a) little money
- (a) little soup

#### (a) few + plural noun:
- (a) few books
- (a) few questions
- (a) few people
- (a) few days

---

**B**

- **a little** = some but not much
  - She didn’t eat anything, but she drank **a little water**.
  - I speak **a little Spanish**.
  - (≈ some Spanish but not much)
  - A: Can you speak Spanish?  
    B: A little.

- **a few** = some but not many
  - Excuse me, I have to make **a few phone calls**.
  - We’re going away for **a few days**.
  - I speak **a few words** of Spanish.
  - A: Are there any shops near here?  
    B: Yes, **a few**.

---

**C**

- **little** (without a) = nearly no or nearly nothing
  - There was **little food** in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very little**:
- Dan is very thin because he eats **very little**. (≈ nearly nothing)

- **few** (without a) = nearly no
  - There were **few people** in the theatre. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very few**:
- Your English is very good. You make **very few mistakes**.

---

**D**

**Compare little and a little**:
- They have **a little** money, so they’re not poor. (≈ they have some money)
- They have **little** money. They are very poor. (≈ nearly no money)

**Compare few and a few**:
- I have **a few** friends, so I’m not lonely. (≈ I have some friends)
- I’m sad and I’m lonely. I have **few** friends. (≈ nearly no friends)
Exercises

84.1 Answer the questions with a little or a few.
1 'Do you have any money?' 'Yes, a little.'
2 'Do you have any envelopes?' 'Yes, ............... , please.'
3 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, ................ , please.'
4 'Did you take any photos when you were on holiday?' 'Yes, .................... .' 
5 'Does your friend speak English?' 'Yes, ............................................ .' 
6 'Are there any good restaurants in this town?' 'Yes, ............................................ .' 

Write a little or a few + these words:
chairs days fresh air friends milk Russian times years

Mark speaks Italian well. He lived in Italy for a few years ..........

Can I have .............................................................................................. in my coffee, please?

When did Amy go away? ...........................................................................................................

Do you speak any foreign languages? I can speak ...........................................................................................

Are you going out alone? I'm going with ................................................................................................

There wasn't much furniture in the room - just a table and ..........................................................................

I'm going out for a walk. I need ................................................................................................

Complete the sentences. Use very little or very few + these words:
coffee hotels -mistakes^ people rain time work

Your English is very good. You make ..........mistakes .......... 

I drink ................................................................................................. I prefer tea.

The weather here is very dry in summer. There is ................................................................................................

It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are ........................................................................

Hurry up. We have ........................................................................

The town is very quiet at night .................................................................................................go out.

Some people in the office are very lazy. They do ........................................................................

Write little / a little or few / a few.

There was .......... food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

When did Sarah go out? .......... minutes ago.

I can't decide now. I need .......... time to think about it.

There was .......... traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.

The bus service isn't very good at night - there are .......... buses after 9 o'clock.

Would you like some soup? 'Yes, .......... , please.'

I'd like to practise my English more, but I have .......... opportunity.

Right or wrong? Change the sentences where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is correct.

We're going away for a few days next week. ..........for a few days ..........

Everybody needs little luck. ............................................

I can't talk to you now - I have few things to do. .......... ........

I eat very little meat - I don't like it very much. .......... ........

Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? ............................................

There were little people on the bus - it was nearly empty. ............................................

Mark is a very private person. Few people know him well. ............................................ 
old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)

adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes etc.)

- It's a nice day today.
- Laura has brown eyes.
- There's a very old bridge in this village.
- Do you like Italian food?
- I don't speak any foreign languages.
- There are some beautiful yellow flowers in the garden.

The adjective is before the noun:
- They live in a modern house. (not a house modern)
- Have you met any famous people? (not people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same:
- a different place different places (not different)

be (am/is/was etc.) + adjective

- The weather is nice today.
- These flowers are very beautiful.
- Are you cold? Shall I close the window?
- I'm hungry. Can I have something to eat?
- The film wasn't very good. It was boring.
- Please be quiet. I'm reading.

look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective

- You look tired.
- You sound happy.
- I feel tired.
- It smells good.
- It tastes good.

Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He</th>
<th>is feels</th>
<th>looks</th>
<th>tired.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They</td>
<td>are</td>
<td>look</td>
<td>happy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>is</td>
<td>smells</td>
<td>tastes good.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

get + adjective (get hungry/tired etc.) → Unit 56  something/anybody + adjective → Unit 79
Exercises

85.1 Put the words in the right order.
1 (new / live in / house / they / a)
2 (like / jacket / I / that / green)
3 (music / like / do / classical / you?)
4 (had / wonderful / a / I / holiday)
5 (went to / restaurant / a / Japanese / we)

They live in a new house.
I
Do

85.2 The words in the box are adjectives (black/foreign etc.) or nouns (air/job etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>air</th>
<th>clouds</th>
<th>foreign</th>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>job</th>
<th>languages</th>
<th>sharp</th>
<th>water</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Do you speak any foreign languages?
2. Look at those clouds. It’s going to rain.
3. Sue works very hard, and she’s very tired. She needs a holiday.
4. I would like to have a shower, but there’s no water.
5. Can you open the window? We need some fresh air.
6. I need a knife to cut these onions.
7. Fire-fighting is a dangerous job.

85.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

feel(s) look(s) sound(s) happy ill nice
look(s) smell(s) taste(s) horrible new surprised

1. You sound happy...
2. It
3. I
4. You
5. They
6. It

85.4 A and B don’t agree. Complete B’s sentences. Use feel/look etc.

A
You look tired.
This is a new coat.
I’m American.
You look cold.
These bags are heavy.
That soup looks good.

B
Do I? I don’t feel tired.
Is it? It doesn’t.
Are you? You
Do I? I
Are they? They
Maybe, but it
quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)

Quickly and suddenly are adverbs.

adjective + -ly → adverb:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adjective</th>
<th>quick</th>
<th>bad</th>
<th>sudden</th>
<th>careful</th>
<th>heavy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adverb</td>
<td>quickly</td>
<td>badly</td>
<td>suddenly</td>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>heavily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): easy → easily heavy → heavily

Adverbs tell you how something happens or how somebody does something:

- The train stopped suddenly.
- I opened the door slowly.
- Please listen carefully.
- I understand you perfectly.

Compare:

- Sue is very quiet.
- Sue speaks very quietly. (not speaks very quiet)
- Be careful!
- Listen carefully! (not listen careful)
- It was a bad game.
- Our team played badly. (not played bad)
- I felt nervous.
- I waited nervously.

hard fast late early

These words are adjectives and adverbs:

- Sue’s job is very hard.
- Sue works very hard. (not hardly)
- Ben is a fast runner.
- Ben can run fast.
- The bus was late/early.
- I went to bed late/early.

good (adjective) → well (adverb)

- Your English is very good.
- You speak English very well. (not very good)
- It was a good game.
- Our team played well.

But well is also an adjective (= not ill, in good health):

- ‘How are you?’  ‘I’m very well, thank you. And you?’
Exercises

86.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with these adverbs:

angrily  badly  dangerously  fast  heavily  quietly

1. It's raining ______.
2. He sings very ______.
3. They came in ______.
4. She shouted at me ______.
5. She can run very ______.
6. He was driving ______.

86.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come know sleep win explain listen think work carefully clearly hard well
carefully clearly easily quickly well

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please ______.
2. They ______. At the end of the day they're always tired.
3. I'm tired this morning. I didn't ______ last night.
4. You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always ______
   before you answer the question.
5. I've met Alice a few times, but I don't ______ her very ______.
6. Our teacher doesn't ______ things very ______. We never understand him.
7. Helen! I need your help ______!

86.3 Which is right?

1. Don't eat so ______. It's not good for you. (quickly is right)
2. Why are you ______? I haven't done anything.
3. Can you speak ______, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so ______?
5. Sam is a very ______ driver.
6. Amy is studying ______ for her examinations.
7. 'Where's Anna?' 'She was here, but she left ______.'
8. Please be ______. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very ______.
10. Those oranges look ______. Can I have one?
11. I don't remember much about the accident. Everything happened ______.

86.4 Write good or well.

1. Your English is very ______. You speak it very ______.
2. Jackie did very ______ in her exams.
3. The party was very ______. I enjoyed it very much.
4. Mark has a difficult job, but he does it ______.
5. How are your parents? Are they ______?
6. Did you have a ______ holiday? Was the weather ______?
Older / heavier / more expensive are comparative forms.  
The comparative is -er (older) or more ... (more expensive).

Short words (1 syllable) → -er:
old → older slow → slower cheap → cheaper
nice → nicer late → later big → bigger

Spelling (→ Appendix 5): big → bigger hot → hotter thin → thinner

Words ending in -y → -ier:
easy → easier heavy → heavier early → earlier

---

Rome is old, but Athens is older. (not more old)
Is it cheaper to go by car or by train? (not more cheap)
Helen wants a bigger car.
This coat is OK, but I think the other one is nicer.
Don't take the bus. It's easier to take a taxi. (not more easy)

far → further:
A: How far is it to the station? A mile?
B: No, it's further. About two miles.

---

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → more ...:
careful → more careful polite → more polite
expensive → more expensive interesting → more interesting

You must be more careful.
I don't like my job. I want to do something more interesting.
Is it more expensive to go by car or by train?

---

good/well → better  bad → worse
The weather wasn't very good yesterday, but it's better today.
'Do you feel better today?' ‘No, I feel worse.’
Which is worse – a headache or a toothache?
Exercises

87.1 Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older / more interesting etc.).

- Look at the pictures and write the comparative (older / more interesting etc.).

87.2 Write the comparative.

1. old older
2. strong
3. happy
4. modern
5. important
6. good
7. large
8. serious
9. pretty
10. crowded

87.3 Write the opposite.

1. younger
2. colder
3. cheaper
4. better
5. nearer
6. easier

87.4 Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

1. Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a bigger one.
2. My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something more interesting.
3. You're not very tall. Your brother is
4. David doesn't work very hard. I work
5. My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is
6. Your idea isn't very good. My idea is
7. These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are
8. My bag isn't very heavy. Your bag is
9. I'm not very interested in art. I'm interested in history.
10. It isn't very warm today. It was yesterday.
11. These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted
12. Britain isn't very big. France is
13. London isn't very beautiful. Paris is
14. This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a sharper one?
15. People today aren't very polite. In the past they were
16. The weather isn't too bad today. Often it is much
older than …  more expensive than …

We use than after comparatives (older than … / more expensive than … etc.):
- Athens is older than Rome.
- Are oranges more expensive than bananas?
- It’s easier to take a taxi than to take the bus.
- ‘How are you today?’ ‘Not bad. Better than yesterday.’
- The restaurant is more crowded than usual.

We usually say: than me / than him / than her / than us / than them.
You can say:
- I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.
- You are a better singer than me. or You are a better singer than I am.
- I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.

more/less than …
- A: How much did your shoes cost? £60?
  B: No, more than that. (= more than £60)
- The film was very short – less than an hour.
- They have more money than they need.
- You go out more than me.

a bit older / much older etc.

Box A is a bit bigger than Box B. Box C is much bigger than Box D.

- Canada is much bigger than France.
- Sue is a bit older than Joe – she’s 25 and he’s 24.
- The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.
- You go out much more than me.

old → older, expensive → more expensive → Unit 87 not as … as → Unit 89
Exercises

88.1 Write sentences about Kate and Ben. Use than.

1. Kate is 26.
2. I'm not a very good swimmer.
3. I'm 1 metre 68 tall.
4. I start work at 8 o'clock.
5. I don't work very hard.
6. I don't have much money.
7. I'm a very good driver.
8. I'm very intelligent.
9. I speak French very well.
10. I don't go to the cinema very much.

1. Ben is 24.
2. I'm a very good swimmer.
3. I'm 1 metre 63 tall.
4. I start work at 8.30.
5. I work very hard.
6. I have a lot of money.
7. I'm not a very good driver.
8. I'm very patient.
9. I'm a good dancer.
10. I'm not very intelligent.
11. I don't speak French very well.
12. I go to the cinema a lot.

88.2 Complete the sentences. Use than.
1. He isn't very tall. You're taller than him (OR taller than he is).
2. She isn't very old. You're
3. I don't work very hard. You work
4. He doesn't watch TV very much. You
5. I'm not a very good cook. You
6. We don't know many people. You
7. They don't have much money. You
8. I can't run very fast. You can
9. She hasn't been here very long. You
10. They didn't get up very early. You
11. He wasn't very surprised. You

88.3 Complete the sentences with a bit or much + comparative (older/better etc.).
1. Emma is 25. Joe is 24½.
   Emma is a bit older than Joe
2. Jack's mother is 52. His father is 69.
   Jack's mother
3. My camera cost £120. Yours cost £112.
   My camera
4. Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.
   I feel
5. Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.
   It's
6. Sarah is an excellent tennis player. I'm not a very good player.
   Sarah
not as ... as

| Rome is not as old as Athens. (= Athens is older) |
| The Grand Hotel isn’t as expensive as the Europa. (= the Europa is more expensive) |
| I don’t play tennis as often as you. (= you play more often) |
| The weather is better than it was yesterday. It isn’t as cold. (= as cold as it was yesterday) |

not as much as ... / not as many as ...

I don’t have as much money as you. (= you’ve got more money)
I don’t know as many people as you. (= you know more people)
I don’t go out as much as you. (= you go out more)

Compare not as ... as and than:

Rome is not as old as Athens. Athens is older than Rome. (not older as Rome)
Tennis isn’t as popular as football. Football is more popular than tennis.
I don’t go out as much as you. You go out more than me.

We usually say: as me / as him / as her etc.
You can say:
She’s not as old as him. or She’s not as old as he is.
You don’t work as hard as me. or You don’t work as hard as I do.

We say the same as ...:
The weather today is the same as yesterday.
My hair is the same colour as yours.
I arrived at the same time as Tom.
Exercises

89.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.

1. A is __________ than C, but not as big as B.
2. A is __________ than B, but not __________ as C.
3. C is __________ than A, but __________.
4. A is __________, but __________.
5. B has got __________.
6. C works __________.

89.2 Write sentences with as ... as ...
1. Athens is older than Rome.  
   Rome __________ as old as Athens.
2. My room is bigger than yours.  
   Your room isn't __________ as big as mine.
3. You got up earlier than me.  
   I didn't __________ as early as you.
4. We played better than them.  
   They __________ as well as we did.
5. I've been here longer than you.  
   You __________ as long as I have.
6. She's more nervous than him.  
   He __________ as much as she is.

89.3 Write as or than.
1. Athens is older __________ Rome.  
   Joe isn't as intelligent __________ he thinks.
2. I don't watch TV as much __________ you.  
   Belgium is smaller __________ Switzerland.
3. You eat more __________ me.  
   Brazil isn't as big __________ Canada.
4. I'm more tired today __________ I was yesterday.  
   I can't wait longer __________ an hour.

89.4 Complete the sentences about Julia, Andy and Laura. Use the same age / the same street etc.

1. (age) __________
2. (street) Julia lives __________
3. (time) Julia got up __________
4. (colour) Andy's __________

Andy is the same age as Laura.
UNIT 90

THE OLDEST  THE MOST EXPENSIVE

HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON
(Per room per night)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hotel</th>
<th>Price</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Europa Hotel</td>
<td>£150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grosvenor</td>
<td>£110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grand Hotel</td>
<td>£130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bennets</td>
<td>£100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Royal</td>
<td>£120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carlton</td>
<td>£98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astoria</td>
<td>£115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Star</td>
<td>£85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palace</td>
<td>£115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Station</td>
<td>£75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Box A is **bigger than** Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** the Grand.

The Europa Hotel is **more expensive than** all the other hotels in the city.

The Europa Hotel is **the most expensive** hotel in the city.

**Bigger** and **more expensive** etc. are **comparative forms** (→ Unit 87).

**Biggest** and **most expensive** etc. are **superlative forms**.

The superlative form is **-est (oldest)** or **most ... (most expensive)**.

Short words (old/cheap/nice etc.) → the -est:
- old → the oldest
- cheap → the cheapest
- nice → the nicest

but
good → the best
bad → the worst

Spelling (→ Appendix 5):
- big → the biggest
- hot → the hottest

Words ending in -y (easy/heavy etc.) → the -iest:
- easy → the easiest
- heavy → the heaviest
- pretty → the prettiest

Long words (careful/expensive/interesting etc.) → the most . . . :
- careful → the most careful
- interesting → the most interesting

We say the oldest . . . / the most expensive . . . etc. (with the):
- The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.
  (= it is older than all the other buildings)
- What is **the longest** river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn’t **the most important** thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

You can use the oldest / the best / the most expensive etc. without a noun:
- Luke is a good player, but he isn't **the best** in the team.
  (the best = the best player)

You can use superlative + I’ve ever . . . / you’ve ever . . . etc.:
- The film was very bad. I think it’s **the worst** film I’ve ever seen.
- What is **the most unusual** thing you’ve ever done?

present perfect + ever → Unit 17  older / more expensive → Units 87–88
**Exercises**

90.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).

big/small
(A/D) A is bigger than D.
(A) A is the biggest.
(B) B is the smallest.

long/short
(C/A) C is A.
(D) D is
(B) B

young/old
(D/C) D
(B) B

expensive/cheap
(D/A) ....................
(C) ....................
(A) ....................

good/bad
(A/C) ..........
(A) ................
(D) ................

90.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (the oldest etc.).

1. This building is very old. It's the oldest building in the town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was of my life.
3. It's a very good film. It's I've ever seen.
4. She's a very popular singer. She's in the country.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was I've ever made.
6. It's a very pretty village. It's I've ever seen.
7. It was a very cold day. It was of the year.
8. He's a very boring person. He's I've ever met.

90.3 Write sentences with a superlative (the longest etc.). Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sydney</th>
<th>Alaska</th>
<th>high</th>
<th>country</th>
<th>Africa</th>
<th>South America</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Everest</td>
<td>the Nile</td>
<td>large</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>the world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>Jupiter</td>
<td>long</td>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>the USA</td>
<td>the solar system</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sydney is the largest city in Australia.
2. Everest
3. 
4. 
5. 
6. 
enough

She isn't going to take a taxi.
She hasn't got enough money.

He can't reach the shelf.
He isn't tall enough.

enough + noun (enough money / enough people etc.)

A: Is there enough milk in your coffee?
B: Yes, thank you.

A: We wanted to play football, but we didn't have enough players.

A: Why don't you buy a car? You've got enough money. (not money enough)

enough without a noun

A: I've got some money, but not enough to buy a car.
B: Yes, thank you.

A: Would you like some more to eat?
B: No, thanks. I've had enough.

A: You're always at home. You don't go out enough.

adjective + enough (good enough / tall enough etc.)

A: Shall we sit outside?
B: No, it isn't warm enough. (not enough warm)

A: Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?

A: Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't long enough. (= it's too short)

Remember:

enough + noun but adjective + enough

enough money    tall enough
enough time      good enough
enough people    old enough

We say:

enough for somebody/something

enough to do something

enough for somebody/something to do something

A: This pullover isn't big enough for me.
A: I haven't got enough money for a new car.

A: I haven't got enough money to buy a new car. (not for buy)

A: Is your English good enough to have a conversation? (not for have)

A: There aren't enough chairs for everybody to sit down.
Exercises

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use enough + these words:

chairs money paint wind

1. She hasn't got enough money.
2. There aren't __________.
3. She hasn't got __________.
4. There isn't __________.

91.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these adjectives + enough:

big long strong tall

1. He isn't ______ enough.
2. The car __________.
3. His legs aren't __________.
4. He __________.

91.3 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:

big eat loud milk old practise space time tired

1. 'Is there ______ milk in your coffee?' 'Yes, thank you.'
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it ______ for you?
3. He can leave school if he wants – he's ______
4. When I visited New York last year, I didn't have ______
   to see all the things I wanted to see.
5. This house isn't ______ for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn't ______
7. My office is very small. There isn't ______
8. It's late, but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not ______
9. Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't ______

91.4 Complete the sentences. Use enough with these words:

money/buy sharp/cut warm/go bread/make well/win time/read

1. We haven't got ______ to buy a new car.
2. This knife isn't ______ tomatoes.
3. The water wasn't ______ swimming.
4. Have we got ______ sandwiches?
5. We played well, but not ______ the game.
6. I don't have ______ newspapers.
too

B too + adjective / adverb (too big / too hard etc.)
- Can you turn the radio down? It's too loud. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm too tired.
- I think you work too hard.

C too much / too many = more than you want, more than is good:
- I don't like the weather here. There is too much rain. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are too many people here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies too much.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are too many cars.

D Compare too and not enough:
- The hat is too big for him.
- The music is too loud. Can you turn it down, please?
- There's too much sugar in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)
- I don't feel very well. I ate too much.

E We say:
- too ... for somebody/something
- These shoes are too big for me.
- It's a small house – too small for a large family.
- too ... to do something
- I'm too tired to go out. (not for go out)
- It's too cold to sit outside.
- too ... for somebody to do something
- She speaks too fast for me to understand.
Exercises

92.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use too + these words:
big  crowded  fast  heavy  loud  low

1 The music is ................................................................. 4 She's driving .................................................................
2 The box is ................................................................. 5 His jacket is .................................................................
3 The net is ................................................................. 6 The museum is .................................................................

92.2 Write too / too much / too many or enough.
1 You're always at home. You don't go out .................................................................
2 I don't like the weather here. There's ................................................................. rain.
3 I can't wait for them. I don't have ................................................................. time.
4 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were ................................................................. people.
5 You're always tired. I think you work ................................................................. hard.
6 'Did you have ................................................................. to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'
7 You drink ................................................................. coffee. It's not good for you.
8 You don't eat ................................................................. vegetables. You should eat more.
9 I don't like the weather here. It's ................................................................. cold.
10 Our team didn't play well. We made ................................................................. mistakes.
11 'Would you like some milk in your tea?' 'Yes, but not ................................................................. .

92.3 Complete the sentences. Use too or enough with these words:
1 I couldn't work. I ................................................................. tired ................................................................. (tired)
2 Can you turn the radio up, please? It ................................................................. loud ................................................................. (loud)
3 I don't want to walk home. It ................................................................. far ................................................................. (far)
4 Don't buy anything in that shop. It ................................................................. expensive ................................................................. (expensive)
5 You can't put all your things in this bag. It ................................................................. big ................................................................. (big)
6 I couldn't do the exercise. It ................................................................. difficult ................................................................. (difficult)
7 Your work needs to be better. It ................................................................. good ................................................................. (good)
8 I can't talk to you now. I ................................................................. busy ................................................................. (busy)
9 I thought the film was boring. It ................................................................. long ................................................................. (long)

92.4 Complete the sentences. Use too (+ adjective) + to ...
1 (I'm not going out / cold) It's ................................................................. too cold to go out .................................................................
2 (I'm not going to bed / early) It's ................................................................. .................................................................
3 (they're not getting married / young) They're ................................................................. .................................................................
4 (nobody goes out at night / dangerous) It's ................................................................. .................................................................
5 (don't phone Sue now / late) It's ................................................................. .................................................................
6 (I didn't say anything / surprised) I was ................................................................. .................................................................
He speaks English very well. (word order 1)

verb + object

The verb (bought) and the object (some new shoes) are usually together. We say:

- Sue bought some new shoes yesterday.  
  (not Sue bought yesterday some new shoes)

- He speaks English very well.  
  (not He speaks very well English)

- I like Italian food very much.  
  (not I like very much …)

- Did you watch TV all evening?  
  (not … watch all evening TV)

- Paul often wears a black hat.  
  (not Paul wears often …)

- We invited a lot of people to the party.

- I opened the door slowly.

- Why do you always make the same mistake?

- I’m going to borrow some money from a friend.

where and when

We went to a party last night.

Place (where?) is usually before time (when?). We say:

- We went to a party last night.  
  (not We went last night to a party)

- Lisa walks to work every day.  
  (not … every day to work)

- Will you be at home this evening?  
  (not … this evening at home)

- I usually go to bed early.  
  (not … early to bed)

- We arrived at the airport at 7 o’clock.

- They’ve lived in the same house for 20 years.

- Joe’s father has been in hospital since June.
Exercises

93.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.
1 Did you watch all evening TV? Did you watch TV all evening?  
2 Sue bought some new shoes yesterday. OK.
3 I like very much this picture.  
4 Tom started last week his new job. OK.
5 I want to speak English fluently.  
6 Jessica bought for her friend a present. OK.
7 I drink every day three cups of coffee. OK.
8 Don't eat your dinner too quickly! OK.
9 I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds. OK.

93.2 Put the words in order.
1 (the door / opened / I / slowly) I opened the door slowly.
2 (a new phone / I / last week / got) OK.
3 (finished / Paul / quickly / his work) OK.
4 (Emily / very well / French / doesn’t speak) OK.
5 (a lot of shopping / did / I / yesterday) OK.
6 (London / do you know / well?) OK.
7 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party) OK.
8 (the problem / carefully / I / explained) OK.
9 (we / at the airport / some friends / met) OK.
10 (did you buy / in England / that jacket?) OK.
11 (every day / do / the same thing / we) OK.
12 (football / don’t like / very much / I) OK.

93.3 Put the words in order.
1 (to work / every day / walks / Lisa) Lisa walks to work every day.
2 (at the hotel / I / early / arrived) We arrived at the hotel early.
3 (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia) Julia goes to Italy every year.
4 (we / since 1998 / here / have lived) We have lived here since 1998.
5 (in London / Sue / in 1990 / was born) Sue was born in London in 1990.
6 (didn’t go / yesterday / Paul / to work) Paul didn’t go to work yesterday.
7 (to a wedding / last weekend / went / Helen) Helen went to a wedding last weekend.
8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had) I had breakfast in bed this morning.
9 (in September / Amy / to university / is going) Amy is going to university in September.
10 (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw) I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
11 (many times / have been / my parents / to the United States) My parents have been to the United States many times.
12 (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant) I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.
13 (to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are you going?) Are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?
14 (the children / I / took / this morning / to school) I took the children to school this morning.
always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

These words (always/never etc.) go with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- always
- usually
- often
- sometimes
- ever
- rarely
- seldom
- also
- already
- all
- just
- still
- both

- My brother **never** speaks to me.
- She's **always** late.
- Do you **often** go to restaurants?
- I **sometimes** eat too much. (or **Sometimes** I eat too much.)
- A: Don't forget to phone Laura.
  B: I've already phoned her.
- I've got three sisters. They're **all** married.

**Always/never etc. go before the verb:**

- **I always** drink coffee in the morning.
  (not **I drink** always coffee)
- Helen **often** goes to London.
  (not **Helen goes** often)
- You **sometimes** look unhappy.
- They **usually** have dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We **rarely** watch TV. or
  We **seldom** watch TV.
- Richard is a good footballer. He **also** plays tennis and volleyball.
  (not **He plays** also tennis)
- I've got three sisters. They **all** live in London.

But **always/never etc. go after am/is/are/was/were:**

- **I am always** tired.
  (not **I always am** tired)
- They are **never** at home during the day.
- It **is usually** very cold here in winter.
- When I was a child, I **was often** late for school.
  A: Where's Laura?
  B: She's **still** in bed.
- I've got two brothers. They're **both** doctors.

**Always/never etc. go between two verbs (have ... been / can ... find etc.):**

- **I will always remember** you.
- It **doesn't often** rain here.
- Do you **usually** go to work by car?
- I **can never** find my keys.
- **Have you ever** been to Egypt?
  A: Where's Laura?
  B: She's **just gone** out. (She’s = She has)
- My friends **have all gone** to the cinema.
Exercises

94.1 Read Paul’s answers to the questions. Write sentences about Paul with *often/never* etc.

1. Do you ever play tennis?  Yes, often.  
   Paul often plays tennis.
2. Do you get up early?  Yes, always.  
   He always gets up early.
3. Are you ever late for work?  No, never.  
   He never is late for work.
   He sometimesgets angry.
5. Do you ever go swimming?  Rarely.  
   He rarely goes swimming.
6. Are you at home in the evenings?  Yes, usually.  
   He usually is at home in the evenings.

94.2 Write these sentences with *never/always/usually* etc.

1. My brother speaks to me. (never)  My brother never speaks to me.
2. Susan is polite. (always) Susan is always polite.
3. I finish work at 5 o'clock. (usually) I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
4. Sarah has started a new job. (just) Sarah has just started a new job.
5. I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6. The bus isn't late. (usually) The bus is usually not late.
7. I don't eat fish. (often) I sometimes don't eat fish.
8. I will forget what you said. (never) I never forget what you said.
9. Have you lost your passport? (ever) Have you ever lost your passport?
10. Do you work in the same place? (still) Do you still work in the same place?
11. They stay in the same hotel. (always) They always stay in the same hotel.
12. Jane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually) Jane usually doesn't work on Saturdays.
13. Is Tina here? (already) Is Tina already here?
14. What do you have for breakfast? (usually) What do you usually have for breakfast?
15. I can remember his name. (never) I never can remember his name.

94.3 Write sentences with *also*.

1. Do you play football? (tennis) Yes, and I also play tennis.
2. Do you speak Italian? (French) Yes, and I speak French.
3. Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and I am hungry.
4. Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes, and I have been to Ireland.
5. Did you buy any clothes? (some books) Yes, and I bought some books.

94.4 Write sentences with *both and all*.

1. They both live in London. They both live in London.
2. They are married. They are married.
3. They are students. They are students.
4. They have cars. They have cars.
6. They have a car. They have a car.
7. They have a student. They have a student.
8. They have a car. They have a car.
9. They have a student. They have a student.
10. They have a car. They have a car.
11. They have a student. They have a student.
12. They have a car. They have a car.
13. They have a student. They have a student.
14. They have a car. They have a car.
15. They have a student. They have a student.
16. They have a car. They have a car.
17. They have a student. They have a student.
18. They have a car. They have a car.
19. They have a student. They have a student.
20. They have a car. They have a car.
21. They have a student. They have a student.
22. They have a car. They have a car.
23. They have a student. They have a student.
24. They have a car. They have a car.
25. They have a student. They have a student.
26. They have a car. They have a car.
27. They have a student. They have a student.
28. They have a car. They have a car.
29. They have a student. They have a student.
30. They have a car. They have a car.
31. They have a student. They have a student.
32. They have a car. They have a car.
33. They have a student. They have a student.
34. They have a car. They have a car.
35. They have a student. They have a student.
still  yet  already

**still** = something is the same as before:
- I had a lot to eat, but I'm still hungry. (= I was hungry before, and I'm hungry now)
- ‘Did you sell your car?’ ‘No, I’ve still got it.’
- ‘Do you still live in Barcelona?’ ‘No, I live in Madrid now.’

**yet** = until now
We use yet in negative sentences (He hasn’t come yet.) and in questions (Has he come yet?).
Yet is usually at the end of a sentence:
- A: Where’s Emma?
  B: She isn’t here yet. (= she will be here, but until now she hasn’t come)
- A: What are you doing this evening?
  B: I don’t know yet. (= I will know later, but I don’t know at the moment)
- A: Are you ready to go yet?
  B: Not yet. In a minute. (= I will be ready, but I’m not ready at the moment)
- A: Have you finished with the newspaper yet?
  B: No, I’m still reading it.

Compare yet and still:
- She hasn’t gone yet = She’s still here. (not she is yet here)
- I haven’t finished eating yet = I’m still eating.

**already** = earlier than expected:
- ‘What time is Joe coming?’ ‘He’s already here.’ (= earlier than we expected)
- ‘I’m going to tell you what happened.’ ‘That’s not necessary. I already know.’
- Sarah isn’t coming to the cinema with us. She has already seen the film.
Exercises

95.1 You meet Tina. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with still.

Tina – two years ago
1. I play the piano.
2. I live in Clare Street.
3. I'm a student.
4. I've got a motorbike.
5. I go to the cinema a lot.
6. I want to be a teacher.

95.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

(before) They were waiting for the bus.
(still) They are still waiting.
(yet) The bus hasn’t come yet.

1. (before) They
2. (before) He was
3. (before) She
4. (before) They

95.3 Write questions with yet.

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now.
   You ask her: Are you ready yet?

2. You are waiting for Helen to arrive. She wasn’t here ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now.
   You ask somebody: Is Helen .........

3. Anna did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now.
   You ask her: Have you ...

4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn’t sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now.
   You ask him: Have you ...

95.4 Complete the sentences. Use already.

1. What time is Joe coming? No, he already ....
2. Do they want to see the film? 
3. I have to see Julia before she goes. It’s too late. She ............
4. Do you need a pen? No, thanks. I ............ one.
5. Shall I pay the bill? No, it’s OK. I ............
6. Shall I tell Paul about the meeting? No, he ............ I told him.
After these verbs (give/lend etc.), there are two possible structures:

**give something to somebody**
- I gave the keys to Sarah.

**give somebody something**
- I gave Sarah the keys.

### give something to somebody

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Something</th>
<th>To somebody</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It</td>
<td>To me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Them</td>
<td>To her.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These flowers</td>
<td>To your mother?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My car</td>
<td>To a friend of mine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The money</td>
<td>To Kate?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Them</td>
<td>To us.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### give somebody something

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Somebody</th>
<th>Something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tom</td>
<td>That book. It’s mine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I gave</td>
<td>some flowers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joe</td>
<td>some money.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lent</td>
<td>an email. Did you get it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sent</td>
<td>her holiday photos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showed</td>
<td>the salt, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>His mother</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Him?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Us</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can also say 'buy/get somebody something':
- I bought my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother.)
- I'm going to the shop. Can I get you anything? (= get anything for you)

You can say:
- I gave the keys to Sarah.
- I gave Sarah the keys.
  * (but not I gave to Sarah the keys)
- That’s my book. Can you give it to me?
- Can you give me that book?
  * (but not Can you give to me that book?)

We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) with it or them:
- I gave it to her.  * (not I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give them to your father.  * (not Give your father them)
Exercises

96.1 Mark had some things that he didn’t want. He gave them to different people.

Write sentences beginning He gave ....

1. What did Mark do with the armchair? He gave it to his brother.
2. What did he do with the tennis racket? He gave ............................................
3. What happened to the books? He .........................................................
4. What about the lamp? ............................................................................
5. What did he do with the pictures? ................................................................
6. And the ladder? ...........................................................................................................................

96.2 You gave presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures. Write a sentence for each person.

1. I gave Paul a book.
2. I gave ................................
3. I ............................................

96.3 Write questions beginning Can you give me ... ? / Can you pass me ... ? etc.

1. (you want the salt) (pass) Can you pass me the salt?
2. (you need an umbrella) (lend) Can you lend me an umbrella?
3. (you want my address) (give) Can you give me your address?
4. (you need twenty pounds) (lend) Can you lend me twenty pounds?
5. (you want more information) (send) Can you send me more information?
6. (you want to see the letter) (show) Can you show me the letter?

96.4 Which is right?

1. I gave to Sarah the keys. / I gave Sarah the keys. (I gave Sarah the keys is right)
2. I’ll lend to you some money if you want. / I’ll lend you some money if you want.
3. Did you send the bill me? / Did you send the bill to me?
4. I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5. Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6. This is Lisa’s bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7. I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.
We use these words (conjunctions) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A: The car stopped.  
sentence B: The driver got out.  

The car stopped and the driver got out.

We stay at home and (we)* watched television.  
My sister is married and (she)* lives in London.  
He doesn't like her, and she doesn't like him.  
I bought a sandwich, but I didn't eat it.  
It's a nice house, but it doesn't have a garden.  
Do you want to go out, or are you too tired?

In lists, we use commas (,). We use and before the last thing:

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair and fell asleep.  
- Karen is at work, Sue has gone shopping and Chris is playing football.

so (the result of something)

sentence A: It was very hot,  
sentence B: I opened the window.  
It's very hot, so she's very fit.  
They don't like travelling, so they haven't been to many places.

because (the reason for something)

sentence A: I opened the window  
sentence B: because it was very hot.  
Joe can't come to the party because he's going away.  
Lisa is hungry because she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning:  
- Because it was very hot, I opened the window.

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:  
- It was late and I was tired, so I went to bed.  
- I always enjoy visiting London, but I wouldn't like to live there because it's too big.
Exercises

97.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use and/but/or.

- I stayed at home.
- I bought a sandwich.
- I went to the window.
- I wanted to phone you.
- I jumped into the river.
- I usually drive to work.
- Do you want me to come with you?
- I didn’t have your number.
- Shall I wait here?
- I didn’t eat it.
- I went by bus this morning.
- I watched TV.
- I swam to the other side.
- I looked out.

1. I stayed at home and watched TV.
2. I bought a sandwich, but I didn’t eat it.
3. ..............................................................
4. ..............................................................................
5. ...............................................................................................
6. ...............................................................................................
7. ................................................................................
8. ...............................................................................................

97.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use and/but/so/because.

1. It was very hot, so he opened the window.
2. They couldn’t play tennis.
3. They went to the museum.
4. Ben wasn’t hungry.
5. Helen was late.
6. Sue said.

97.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use and/but etc.

1. (and) In the evening I stayed at home and studied.
2. (because) I went to bed very early because I was tired.
3. (but)
4. (and)
5. (so)
6. (because)
When ...

When I went out, it was raining.
This sentence has two parts:

when I went out + it was raining

You can say:

- When I went out, it was raining. or
  It was raining when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if When ... is at the beginning:

- When you’re tired, don’t drive.
  Don’t drive when you’re tired.

- Helen was 25 when she got married.
  When Helen got married, she was 25.

We do the same in sentences with before/while/after:

- Always look both ways before you cross the road.
  Before you cross the road, always look both ways.

- While I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
  It began to rain while I was waiting for the bus.

- He never played football again after he broke his leg.
  After he broke his leg, he never played football again.

When I am ... / When I go ... etc.

Next week Sarah is going to New York.
She has a friend, Lisa, who lives in New York,
but Lisa is also going away – to Mexico.
So they won’t see each other in New York.

Lisa will be in Mexico when Sarah is in New York.
The time is future (next week) but we say:
... when Sarah is in New York.
(not when Sarah will be)

We use the present (I am / I go etc.) with a future meaning after when:

- When I get home this evening, I’m going to have a shower.
  (not When I will get home)

- I can’t talk to you now. I’ll talk to you later when I have more time.

We do the same after before/while/after/until:

- Please close the window before you go out.
  (not before you will go)

- Rachel is going to stay in our flat while we are away.
  (not while we will be)

- I’ll wait here until you come back.
  (not until you will come back)
Exercises

98.1 Write sentences beginning with when. Choose from the boxes.

When +
I went out
I'm tired
I knocked on the door
I go on holiday
the programme ended
I got to the hotel

I turned off the TV
I always go to the same place
there were no rooms
it was raining
there was no answer
I like to watch TV

1 When I went out, it was raining.
2
3
4
5
6

98.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

somebody broke into the house
before they came here
before they crossed the road
they went to live in New Zealand
while they were away
when they heard the news
they didn’t believe me

1 They looked both ways...before they crossed the road.
2 They were very surprised.
3 After they got married,
4 Their house was damaged in a storm.
5 Where did they live?
6 While we were asleep.
7 When I told them what happened,

98.3 Which is right?

1 I stay / I'll stay here until you come / you'll come back. (I'll stay and you come are right)
2 I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3 We must do something before it's / it will be too late.
4 Helen is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5 Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6 We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.
7 When I come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring our holiday photos.
8 I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.
9 Let's go out for a walk before it gets / it will get dark.
10 I'm not ready yet. I tell / I'll tell you when I'm / I'll be ready.

98.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 Can you close the window before you go out.
2 What are you going to do when
3 When I have enough money.
4 I'll wait for you while
5 When I start my new job.
6 Will you be here when
If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

If at the beginning

- If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
- If you don’t hurry, you’ll miss the train.
- If you’re hungry, have something to eat.
- If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

If in the middle

- It will be cheaper if we go by bus.
- You’ll miss the train if you don’t hurry.
- I’m going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
- Is it OK if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the if-part of the sentence alone:

- ‘Are you going to the concert?’ ‘Yes, if I can get a ticket.’

If you see Ann tomorrow... etc.

After if, we use the present (not will). We say ‘if you see ...’ (not if you will see):

- If you see Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me. (not if I will be)
- What shall we do if it rains? (not if it will rain)
- If I don’t feel well tomorrow, I’ll stay at home.

if and when

If I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I’m not sure:

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Maybe. If I go out, I’ll close the windows.

When I go out = I’m going out (for sure):

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I’ll close the windows.

Compare when and if:

- When I get home this evening, I’m going to have a shower.
- If I’m late this evening, don’t wait for me. (not When I’m late)
- We’re going to play tennis if it doesn’t rain. (not when it doesn’t rain)
### Exercises

#### 99.1 Write sentences beginning with if. Choose from the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If +</th>
<th>+</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>you don't hurry</td>
<td>we can have lunch now</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you pass the exam</td>
<td>you can have them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you fail the exam</td>
<td>I can lend you some</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you don't want this magazine</td>
<td>you'll get a certificate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you want those pictures</td>
<td>you'll be late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you're busy now</td>
<td>I'll throw it away</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you're hungry</td>
<td>we can talk later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you need money</td>
<td>you can do it again</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. If you don't hurry, you'll be late.
2. If you pass
3. If
4. If
5. If
6. If
7. If
8. If

#### 99.2 Which is right?

1. If I'm / I'll be late this evening, don't wait for me. *(I'm is right)*
2. Will you call me if I give / I'll give you my phone number?
3. If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the evening.
5. I'm / I'll be surprised if Michael and Jane get / will get married.
6. Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

#### 99.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
2. If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.
3. I don't want to disturb you if
4. If you go to bed early tonight,
5. Turn the TV off if
6. Tina won't pass her exams if
7. If I have time tomorrow,
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if
9. I'll be surprised if

#### 99.4 Write if or when.

1. If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.
2. I'm going to do some shopping now. I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I'm thinking of going to see Tom. I go, will you come with me?
4. If you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.
5. Is it OK I close the window?
6. John is still at school. he leaves school, he wants to go to college.
7. Shall we have a picnic tomorrow the weather is good?
8. We're going to Madrid next week. We don't have anywhere to stay - we hope to find a hotel we get there. I don't know what we'll do we don't find a room.
If I had ... If we went ... etc.

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one. He doesn't have enough money.

If he had the money, he would buy a fast car.

Usually had is past, but in this sentence had is not past. If he had the money = if he had the money now (but he doesn't have it).

If you had it they could ... However, have is not past if you have the money = if you have it (but you don't have it).

If I had the money I'd buy a fast car.

You can say:

- If he had the money, he would buy a car.
- He would buy a car if he had the money.

I'd / she'd / they'd etc. = I would / she would / they would etc.:

- I don't know the answer. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. We'd get wet if we went out.
- Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She wouldn't be happy if she lived in the country.
- If you didn't have a job, what would you do? (but you have a job)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. I'd help you if I could. (but I can't)
- If we had a car, we could travel more. (but we don't have a car, so we can't travel much)

If (l) were ... You can say: if I/ he/ she/ it was or if I/ he/ she/ it were

- It's not a very nice place. I wouldn't go there if I were you. (or ... if I was you)
- It would be nice if the weather was better. (or ... if the weather were better)
- What would Tom do if he were here? (or ... if he was here)

Compare:

if I have / if it is etc.

- I must go and see Helen. If I have time, I will go today. (= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)
- I like that jacket. I'll buy it if it isn't too expensive. (= maybe it will not be too expensive)
- I'll help you if I can. (= maybe I can)

if I had / if it was etc.

- I must go and see Helen. If I had time, I would go today. (= I don't have time today, so I will not go)
- I like this jacket, but it's very expensive. I'd buy it if it wasn't so expensive. (= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
- I'd help you if I could, but I can't.

If I have / if I can etc. ➔ Unit 99
Exercises

100.1 Complete the sentences.

1. I don't know the answer. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
2. I have a car. I couldn't travel very much if I didn't have a car.
3. I don't want to go out. If I were to go out, I'd go.
4. We don't have a key. If we had a key, we could get into the house.
5. I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I were hungry.
6. Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she didn't enjoy it.
7. He can't speak any foreign languages. If he could speak a foreign language, perhaps he would get a better job.
8. You don't try hard enough. If you tried harder, you would have more success.
9. I have a lot to do today. If I had so much to do, we could go out.

100.2 Put the verb in the correct form.

1. If he had the money, he would buy a fast car. (he/have)
2. Jane likes living in a city. She wouldn't be happy if she lived in the country. (she/not/be)
3. If I wanted to learn Italian, I would go to Italy. (I/go)
4. I haven't told Helen what happened. She'd be angry if she knew. (she/know)
5. If you had a map, I could show you where I live. (you/ have)
6. What would you do if you won a lot of money? (you/win)
7. It's not a very good hotel. It would be cleaner there if I were you. (I/not/stay)
8. If it was nearer London, we would go there more often. (we/live)
9. It's a shame you have to go now. It would be nice if you had more time. (it/be)
10. I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if the salary was better. (the salary/be)
11. I don't know anything about cars. If the car broke down, I wouldn't know what to do. (I/not/know)
12. If you could change one thing in the world, what would you change? (you/change)

100.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

we (have) a bigger house, we (buy) a bigger house, it (be) a bit cheaper, we (have) some pictures on the wall, every day (be) the same, I (watch) it, I (be) bored

1. I'd buy that jacket if it was a bit cheaper.
2. If there was a good film on TV tonight,
3. This room would be nicer if
4. If there wasn't so much traffic,
5. Life would be boring if
6. If I had nothing to do,
7. We could invite all our friends to stay if
8. If we had more money,

100.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1. I'd be happier if I could get a better job.
2. If I could go anywhere in the world,
3. I wouldn't be very happy if
4. I'd buy if
5. If I saw an accident in the street,
6. The world would be a better place if
a person **who** ... a thing **that**/**which** ...

(italic: relative clauses 1)

**who** is for people (not things):

A thief is a **person** who steals things.

Do you know **anybody** who can play the piano?

**The man** who phoned didn’t give his name.

**The people** who work in the office are very friendly.

---

**that** is for things or people:

An airplane is a **machine** that flies.

**Emma** lives in a **house** that is 400 years old.

**The people** that work in the office are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more usual.

---

**which** is for things (not people):

An airplane is a **machine** which flies. *(not a machine who ...)*

**Emma** lives in a **house** which is 400 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

☐ Do you remember the **woman** **who** was playing the piano at the party?

*(not the woman which ...)*
Choose from the boxes and write sentences: A ... is a person who .... Use a dictionary if necessary.

A thief  a dentist  doesn't tell the truth  is ill in hospital
a butcher  a fool  takes care of your teeth  steals things
a musician  a genius  is very intelligent  does stupid things
a patient  a liar  plays a musical instrument  sells meat

1. A thief is a person who steals things.
2. A butcher is a person ...
3. A musician ...
4. ...
5. ...
6. ...
7. ...
8. ...

Make one sentence from two.

1. (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)
   The man who phoned didn't give his name.
2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)
   The woman a yellow dress.
3. (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)
   Most of the students ...
4. (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)
   The ...

Write who or which.

1. I met a woman who can speak six languages.
2. What's the name of the man who has just started work in your office?
3. What's the name of the river which flows through the town?
4. Where is the picture which was hanging on the wall?
5. Do you know anybody who wants to buy a car?
6. You always ask questions which are difficult to answer.
7. I have a friend who is very good at repairing cars.
8. I think everybody who went to the party enjoyed it very much.
9. Why does he always wear clothes which are too small for him?

Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1. A thief is a person who steals things.  a person who steals things
2. An airplane is a machine that flies. OK
3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee.  who
4. What's happened to the money that was on the table?  which
5. I don't like people which never stop talking.  who
6. I know somebody that can help you.  who
7. I know somebody who works in that shop.  who
8. Correct the sentences who are wrong.  who
9. My neighbour bought a car who cost £40,000.
the people we met  the hotel you stayed at
(relative clauses 2)

You can say:

- The bag *(that)* he is carrying ...
- ... the money *(that)* Kate won?

You do not need *that/who/which* when it is the *object*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject</th>
<th>verb</th>
<th>object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The man</td>
<td>was carrying</td>
<td>a bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kate</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>some money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td>wanted</td>
<td>some books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>some people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ \rightarrow \text{the bag *(that)* the man was carrying} \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{the money *(that)* Kate won} \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{the books *(that)* you wanted} \]
\[ \rightarrow \text{the people *(who)* we met} \]

You do not need *that/who/which* when it is the *subject* (→ Unit 101):

- I met a woman *who* can speak six languages.
- Jack was wearing a hat *that* was too big for him.

Sometimes there is a *preposition* (*to/in/at* etc.) after the verb:

- Eve is *talking to* a man.
- We *stayed at* a hotel.
- I *told you about* some books.

We say:

- ... the books *I told you about*.

You can say *(a place) where* ...

- The hotel *where* we stayed was near the station.

You must use *who/that/which* when it is the *subject* (→ Unit 101):

- I met a woman *who* can speak six languages.
- Jack was wearing a hat *that* was too big for him.
Exercises

102.1 Make one sentence from two.

1 (Helen took some pictures. Have you seen them?)
   Have you seen the pictures Helen took?

2 (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)
   I've lost the

3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)
   I like the

4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)
   Where are the

5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)

6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)
   How

102.2 Make one sentence from two.

1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)
   The bag I was carrying was very heavy.

2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)
   The

3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)
   The shoes

4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)
   The

102.3 You ask your friend some questions. Complete the sentences.

1 Your friend stayed at a hotel. You ask:
   What's the name of the hotel you stayed at?

2 Your friend was talking to some people. You ask:
   Who are the people

3 Your friend was looking for some keys. You ask:
   Did you find the

4 Your friend is going to a party. You ask:
   Where is the

5 Your friend was talking about a film. You ask:
   What's the name of

6 Your friend is listening to some music. You ask:
   What's that

7 Your friend applied for a job. You ask:
   Did you get

102.4 Complete the questions. Use where.

1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:
   Did you like the hotel where you stayed?

2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:
   What's the name of the restaurant

3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:
   How big is the

4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him:
   Where exactly is
at 8 o’clock  on Monday  in April

I start work at 8 o’clock.
The shops close at 5.30.

Bye! I’ll see you on Friday.
What do you usually do on Sundays?
The concert is on 22 November.

I’m going on holiday in October.
Emma was born in 1995.
The park is beautiful in spring.

We say:

at the weekend
at night
at Christmas
at the end of ...
at the moment

Are you going away at the weekend?
I can’t sleep at night.
Where will you be at Christmas? (but on Christmas Day)
I’m going on holiday at the end of October.
Are you busy at the moment?

in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening

I always feel good in the morning.
Do you often go out in the evening?

but
on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night etc.

I’m meeting Jackie on Monday morning.
Are you doing anything on Saturday night?

We do not use at/on/in before:

this ...(this morning / this week etc.)
last ...(last August / last week etc.)
next ...(next Monday / next week etc.)
every ...(every day / every week etc.)

Are you going out this evening?
We go on holiday every summer. Last summer we went to Canada.
I’m leaving next Monday.
(not on next Monday)

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.

Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes.
(= it leaves five minutes from now)

Bye! I’ll see you in a few days.
(= a few days from now)
Exercises

103.1 Write at/on/in.
1 __ on __ 6 June
2 __ in __ the evening
3 __ half past two
4 __ Wednesday
5 __ 2007
6 __ September

7 __ 24 September
8 __ Thursday
9 __ 11.45
10 __ Christmas Day
11 __ Christmas
12 __ the morning
13 __ Friday morning
14 __ Saturday night
15 __ night
16 __ the end of the day
17 __ the weekend
18 __ winter

103.2 Write at/on/in.
1 Bye! See you __ on __ Friday.
2 Where were you __ 28 February?
3 I got up __ 8 o'clock this morning.
4 I like getting up early __ the morning.
5 My sister got married __ May.
6 Jessica and I first met __ 2006.
7 Did you go out __ Tuesday?
8 Did you go out __ Tuesday evening?
9 Do you often go out __ the evening?
10 Let's meet __ 7.30 tomorrow evening.

11 I often go away __ the weekend.
12 I'm starting my new job __ 3 July.
13 We often go to the beach __ summer.
14 George isn't here __ the moment.
15 Jane's birthday is __ December.
16 Do you work __ Saturdays?
17 The company started __ 1999.
18 I like to look at the stars __ night.
19 I'll send you the money __ the end of the month.

103.3 Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.

1 Lisa is going to the cinema __ on __ Wednesday evening.
2 She has to phone Chris __
3 She isn't doing anything special __
4 She's got a driving lesson __
5 She's going to a party __
6 She's meeting Sam __

103.4 Write sentences with in ...
1 It's 8.25 now. The train leaves at 8.30.
   The train leaves in five minutes.
2 It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday.
3 Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June.
4 It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.

103.5 Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1 I'm going __ on __ Friday.
2 I'm going __ next Friday. (already complete)
3 I always feel tired __ the evening.
4 Will you be at home __ this evening?
5 We went to France __ last summer.
6 Laura was born __ 1997.
7 What are you doing __ the weekend?
8 I phone Robert __ every Sunday.
9 Shall we play tennis __ next Sunday?
10 I can't go to the party __ Sunday.
11 I'm going out. I'll be back __ an hour.
12 I don't often go out __ night.
from ... to until since for

from ... to ...
- We lived in Japan from 2003 to 2010.
- I work from Monday to Friday.

You can also say from ... until ...
- We lived in Japan from 2003 until 2010.

until ...
- They’re going away tomorrow. They’ll be away until Friday.
- I went to bed early, but I wasn’t tired. I read a book until 3 o’clock.
- Wait here until I come back.

You can also say till (= until):
- Wait here till I come back.

Compare:
- ‘How long will you be away?’ ‘Until Monday.’
- ‘When are you coming back?’ ‘On Monday.’

since + a time in the past (to now)
We use since after the present perfect (have been / have done etc.):
- Joe is in hospital. He has been in hospital since Monday. (= from Monday to now)
- Sue and Dave have been married since 1998. (= from 1998 to now)
- It has been raining since I arrived.

Compare:
- We lived in Japan from 2003 to 2010.
  We lived in Japan until 2010.
- Now we live in Canada. We came to Canada in 2010.
  We have lived in Canada since 2010. (= from 2010 until now)

We use for (not since) + a period of time (three days / ten years etc.):
- Joe has been in hospital for three days. (not since three days)

for + a period of time
- Gary stayed with us for three days.
- I’m going away for a few weeks.
- I’m going away for the weekend.
- They’ve been married for ten years.
Read the information and complete the sentences. Use from ... to / until / since.

**ALEX**
- I live in England now.
- I lived in Canada before.
- I came to England in 2009.

**KAREN**
- I live in Switzerland now.
- I lived in France before.
- I came to Switzerland in 2011.

**CLARE**
- I work in a hotel now.
- I worked in a restaurant before.
- I started work in the hotel in 2012.

**ADAM**
- I'm a journalist now.
- I was a teacher before.
- I started work as a journalist in 2008.

---

5. (Karen / Switzerland / 2011 →) Karen has lived in Switzerland since 2011.
7. (Clare / a hotel / 2012 →) Clare has worked at a hotel since 2012.
9. (Adam / a journalist / 2008 →) Adam has been a journalist since 2008.

---

Now write sentences with for.

10. (Alex / Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years.
11. (Alex / England) Alex has lived in England.
12. (Karen / Switzerland) Karen has lived in Switzerland.
13. (Clare / a restaurant) Clare has worked in a restaurant.
14. (Clare / a hotel) Clare has worked at a hotel.
15. (Adam / a teacher) Adam has been a teacher.
16. (Adam / a journalist) Adam has been a journalist.

---

**Write until/since/for.**

1. Sue and Dave have been married since 1998.
2. I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed until 10 o'clock.
3. We waited for Sue for half an hour, but she didn't come.
4. ‘Have you just arrived?’ ‘No, I've been here for half past seven.’
5. ‘How long did you stay at the party last night?’ ‘I've been there until midnight.’
6. Dan and I are good friends. We have known each other for ten years.
7. I'm tired. I'm going to lie down for a few minutes.
8. Don't open the door of the train until the train stops.
9. This is my house. I've lived here since I was seven years old.
10. Jack has gone away. He'll be away until Wednesday.
11. Next week I'm going to Paris for three days.
12. I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work until six.
13. ‘How long have you known Anna?’ ‘We have been friends since we were at school together.’
14. Where have you been? I've been waiting for you for twenty minutes.
before, during and after

- Everybody feels nervous before exams.
- I fell asleep during the film.
- We were tired after our visit to the museum.

before, while and after

- Don’t forget to close the window before you go out.
- I often fall asleep while I’m reading.
- They went home after they did the shopping.

during, while and for

- We use during + noun (during the film). We use while + verb (while I’m reading):
  - We didn’t speak during the meal.
  - We didn’t speak while we were eating. (not during we were eating)
- Use for (not during) + a period of time (three days / two hours / a year etc.):
  - We played tennis for two hours. (not during two hours)
  - I lived in London for a year. (not during a year)

You can use before/after + -ing (before going / after eating etc.):

- I always have breakfast before going to work. (= before I go to work)
- After doing the shopping, they went home. (= after they did)

We say before going (not before to go), after doing (not after to do) etc.:

- Before eating the apple, I washed it carefully. (not before to eat)
- I started work after reading the newspaper. (not after to read)
Exercises

105.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

| after  | during | + | lunch | the concert | the end | they went to Australia | before | while | the exam | you’re waiting |
|--------|--------|+|--------|------------|--------|------------------------|--------|--------|----------|----------------|

1. Everybody was nervous ___ before the exam ___.
2. I usually work four hours in the morning, and another three hours ___.
3. The film was really boring. We left ___.
4. Anna went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot ___.
5. My aunt and uncle lived in London ___.
6. A: Somebody broke a window ___.
   B: No, I was asleep all the time.
7. Would you like to sit down ___?
8. A: Are you going home ___?
   B: Yes, I have to get up early tomorrow.

105.2 Write during/while/for.

1. We didn’t speak ___ we were eating.
2. We didn’t speak ___ the meal.
3. Gary called ___ you were out.
4. Amy went to Italy and stayed in Rome ___ five days.
5. I didn’t check my email ___ I was away.
6. The students looked very bored ___ the lesson.
7. I fell out of bed ___ I was asleep.
8. Last night I watched TV ___ three hours.
9. I don’t usually watch TV ___ the day.
10. Do you ever watch TV ___ you are having dinner?

105.3 Complete the sentences. Use -ing (doing, having etc.).

1. After ___ doing ___ the shopping, they went home.
2. I felt sick after ___ too much chocolate.
3. I’m going to ask you a question. Think carefully before ___ it.
4. I felt awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after ___ a shower.
5. After ___ my work, I left the office and went home.
6. Before ___ to a foreign country, it’s good to try and learn a little of the language.

105.4 Write sentences with before + -ing and after + -ing.

1. They did the shopping. Then they went home.
   After ___ the shopping, they went home.
2. John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years.
   John worked ___.
3. I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.
   Before ___.
4. We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
   After ___.
5. Let’s have a cup of coffee. Then we’ll go out.
   Let’s ___.
**Unit 106**

**A**

**in**

- in a room
- in a shop
- in a car
- in the water
- in a garden
- in a town
- in the city centre
- in Brazil

- 'Where's David?'  ‘In the kitchen. / In the garden. / In London.’
- What's in that box / in that bag / in that cupboard?
- Rachel works in a shop / in a bank / in a factory.
- I went for a swim in the river / in the pool / in the sea.
- Milan is in the north of Italy. Naples is in the south.
- I live in a big city, but I'd like to live in the country.

**B**

**at**

- at the bus stop
- at the door
- at the traffic lights
- at her desk

- There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
- Vicky is working at her desk.

- at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of...):
  - Write your name at the top of the page.
  - My house is at the end of the street.

**C**

**on**

- on a shelf
- on a plate
- on a balcony
- on the floor
- on a wall
- on a door
- on the ceiling

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- There is a stamp on the envelope.

- on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorbike:
  - Who is that man on the motorbike?
Exercises

106.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.

1. Where is he? **In the kitchen.**
2. Where are the shoes? ...........................................................................
3. Where is the pen? ............................................................................
4. Where is the clock? .............................................................................
5. Where is the bus? ..................................................................................
6. Where are the horses? .........................................................................
7. Where are they standing? ....................................................................
8. Where is she swimming? .....................................................................
9. Where is he standing? .........................................................................
10. Where is the spider? ...........................................................................
11. Where is he sitting? ..........................................................................
12. Where is she sitting? ..........................................................................

106.2 Write in/at/on.

1. Don’t sit **on** the grass. It’s wet.
2. What do you have **in** your bag?
3. Look! There’s a man **on** the roof. What’s he doing?
4. There are a lot of fish **in** this river.
5. Our house is number 45 – the number is **in** the door.
6. ‘Is the hospital near here?’ ‘Yes, turn left **at** the traffic lights.’
7. It’s difficult to park **in** the centre of town. It’s better to take the bus.
8. My sister lives **in** Brussels.
9. There’s a small park **at** the top of the hill.
10. I think I heard the doorbell. There’s somebody **at** the door.
11. Munich is a large city **at** the south of Germany.
12. There are a few shops **at** the end of the street.
13. It’s difficult to carry a lot of things **at** a bike.
14. I looked at the list of names. My name was **at** the bottom.
15. There is a mirror **on** the wall **in** the living room.
in

in bed
in hospital
in the sky
in the world
in a newspaper / in a book
in a photo(graph) / in a picture
in a car / in a taxi
in the middle (of ...)

‘Where’s Kate?’ ‘She’s in bed.’
David’s father is ill. He’s in hospital.
I like to look at the stars in the sky at night.
What’s the largest city in the world?
I read about the accident in the newspaper.
You look sad in this picture.
Did you come here in your car?
There’s a big tree in the middle of the garden.

at

at home
at work / at school
at university / at college
at the station / at the airport
at Lisa’s (house) / at my sister’s (house) / at the doctor’s / at the hairdresser’s etc.
at a concert / at a party / at a football match etc.

Will you be at home this evening?
‘Where’s Kate?’ ‘She’s at work.’
Helen is studying law at university.
I’ll meet you at the station, OK?
A: Where were you yesterday?
B: At my sister’s.
I saw Tom at the doctor’s.
There weren’t many people at the party.

on

on a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a ship
on the ground floor / on the first floor etc.
on the way (to ...) / on the way home

Did you come here on the bus?
The office is on the first floor.
I met Anna on the way to work / on the way home.
Exercises

107.1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use in/at/on.

1. Where is she? In hospital.
2. Where are they?
3. Where is he?
4. Where are they?
5. Where are the stars?
6. Where are they?
7. Where is Steve?
8. Where is the restaurant?
9. Where is she?
10. Where are they?
11. Where are they?
12. Where are they?

107.2 Write in/at/on.

1. Helen is studying law at university.
2. There was a big table in the middle of the room.
3. What is the longest river in the world?
4. Were there many people at the concert last night?
5. Will you be at home tomorrow afternoon?
6. Who is the man in this photo? Do you know him?
7. Where are your children? Are they at school?
8. Gary is coming by train. I'm going to meet him at the station.
9. Charlie is in hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
10. How many pages are there in this book?
11. 'Are you hungry after your journey?' 'No, I had something to eat at the train.'
12. I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down at the way here.
13. 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he's at his friend's house.'
14. Don't believe everything you see in the newspaper!
15. I walked to work, but I came home by the bus.
to
go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...

We're going to London on Sunday.
I want to go to Italy next year.
We walked from my house to the centre of town.
What time do you go to bed?

in/at (→ Units 106–107)
be/stay/do something (etc.) in ...

Piccadilly Circus is in London.
My brother lives in Italy.
The main shops are in the centre of town.
I like reading in bed.

be/stay/do something (etc.) at ...
The bus is at the airport.
Sarah wasn't at work yesterday.
I met a lot of people at the party.
Helen stayed at her brother's house.

home
go/come/walk (etc.) home (without to):
I'm tired. I'm going home.
(not to home)
Did you walk home?

be/stay/do something (etc.) at home:
I'm staying at home tonight.
Dan doesn't work in an office.
He works at home.

arrive and get

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Italy / arrive in Paris etc.):
They arrived in this country last week. (not arrived to this country)

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):
What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not arrive to the hotel)

got to (a place):
What time did you get to the hotel?
What time did you get to Paris?

get home / arrive home (no preposition):
I was tired when I got home. or I was tired when I arrived home.
Exercises

108.1 Write **to** or **in**.
1 I like reading **in** bed.
2 We’re going **to** Italy next month.
3 Sue is on holiday **in** Italy at the moment.
4 I have to go **to** the hospital tomorrow.
5 I was tired, so I stayed **in** bed late.
6 What time do you usually go **to** bed?
7 Does this bus go **to** the centre?
8 Would you like to live **in** another country?

108.2 Write **to** or **at** if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1 Paula didn’t go **to** work yesterday.
2 I’m tired. I’m going **at** home. (already complete)
3 Tina is not very well. She has gone **to** the doctor.
4 Would you like to come **to** a party on Saturday?
5 ‘Is Lisa **at** home?’ ‘No, she’s gone **to** work.’
6 There were 20,000 people **in** the football match.
7 Why did you go **in** home early last night?
8 A boy jumped into the river and swam **to** the other side.
9 There were a lot of people waiting **at** the bus stop.
10 We had a good meal **in** a restaurant, and then we went back **at** the hotel.

108.3 Write **to, at** or **in** if necessary. One sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1 I’m not going out this afternoon. I’m staying **at** home.
2 We’re going **to** a concert tomorrow evening.
3 I went **to** New York last year.
4 How long did you stay **in** New York?
5 Next year we hope to go **to** Canada to visit some friends.
6 Do you want to go **to** the cinema this evening?
7 Did you park your car **at** the station?
8 After the accident three people were taken **in** hospital.
9 How often do you go **to** the dentist?
10 ‘Is Sarah here?’ ‘No, she’s **at** Helen’s.’
11 My house is **at** the end of the street on the left.
12 I went **to** Maria’s house, but she wasn’t **at** home.
13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk **in** home.
14 ‘Who did you meet **at** the party?’ ‘I didn’t go **to** the party.’

108.4 Write **to, at** or **in** if necessary. Sometimes the sentence is already complete, and no word is necessary.
1 What time do you usually get **to** work? 4 When did you arrive **in** London?
2 What time do you usually get **at** home? 5 What time does the train get **to** Paris?
3 What time did you arrive **in** the party? 6 We arrived **at** home very late.

108.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use **to/in/at**.
1 At 3 o’clock this morning I was **in** bed
2 Yesterday I went
3 At 11 o’clock yesterday morning I was
4 One day I’d like to go
5 I don’t like going
6 At 9 o’clock yesterday evening I was
under, behind, opposite etc.

**next to / beside / between / in front of / behind**

- A is next to B. or A is beside B.
- B is between A and C.
- D is in front of B.
- E is behind B.

*also*
- A is on the left.
- C is on the right.
- B is in the middle (of the group).

**opposite / in front of**

- A is sitting in front of B.
- A is sitting opposite C.
- C is sitting opposite A.

**by (= next to / beside)**

- Our house is by the sea. (= beside the sea)
- Who is that man standing by the window?
- If you feel cold, why don’t you sit by the fire?

by the window

**under**

- The cat is under the table.
- The girl is standing under a tree.
- I’m wearing a jacket under my coat.

under the table under a tree

**above and below**

- A is above the line. (= higher than the line)
- B is below the line. (= lower than the line)

- The pictures are above the shelves.
- The shelves are below the pictures.

up/over/through etc. ⇒ Unit 110 by ⇒ Unit 111
Exercises

109.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.

1 Carl is standing behind Frank.
2 Frank is sitting beside Emma.
3 Emma is sitting beside Becky.
4 Emma is sitting between Daniela and Frank.
5 Daniela is sitting beside Emma.
6 Frank is sitting behind Carl.
7 Alan is standing beside Daniela.
8 Alan is standing to the left.
9 Becky is standing in the middle.

109.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1 The cat is under the table.
2 There is a big tree in front of the house.
3 The plane is flying above the clouds.
4 She is standing in front of the piano.
5 The cinema is to the right.
6 She’s standing beside the fridge.
7 The switch is beside the window.
8 The cupboard is beside the sink.
9 There are some shoes beside the bed.
10 The plant is beside the piano.
11 Paul is sitting beside Fiona.
12 In Britain people drive on the left.

109.3 Write sentences about the picture.

1 (next to) The bank is next to the bookshop.
2 (in front of) The supermarket is in front of the theatre.
3 (opposite) The bank is opposite the bookshop.
4 (next to) The supermarket is next to the theatre.
5 (above) The floor is above the ground.
6 (between) The building is between the theatre and the bookshop.
up, over, through etc.

- Jane is going to France next week.
- We walked from the hotel to the station.
- A lot of English words come from Latin.

- We jumped into the water.
- A man came out of the house and got into a car.
- Why are you looking out of the window?
- I took the old batteries out of the radio.

We say put something in ... (not usually into):
- I put new batteries in the radio.

- Don't put your feet on the table.
- Please take your feet off the table.
- I'm going to hang some pictures on the wall.
- Be careful! Don't fall off your bike.
- We got on the bus in Princes Street.

- We walked up the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don't fall down the stairs.

- The plane flew over the mountains.
- I jumped over the wall into the garden.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk under a ladder.

- A bird flew into the room through a window.
- The old road goes through the village.
- The new road goes round the village.
- The bus stop is just round the corner.
- I walked round the town and took some photographs.

You can also use around (= round):
- We walked around the town.

- I was walking along the road with my dog.
- Let's go for a walk along the river.
- The dog swam across the river.

- They walked past me without speaking.
- A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
  B: Go along this road, past the cinema, under the bridge and the hospital is on the left.
Exercises

110.1 Somebody asks you how to get to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning Go ...

1. Go past the church.
2. Go the bridge.
3. Go the hill.
4. Go the steps.
5. Go this street.

110.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

1. The dog swam across the river.
2. A book fell from the shelf.
3. A plane flew over the village.
4. A woman got into the car.
5. A girl ran into the road.
6. Suddenly a car came around the corner.
7. They drove to the village.
8. They got up the train.
9. The moon travels around the earth.
10. They got through the house into a window.

110.3 Complete the sentences. Use over/from/into etc.

1. I looked into the window and watched the people in the street.
2. My house is very near here. It’s just over the corner.
3. ‘Where’s my phone?’ ‘You put it into your bag.’
4. How far is it from here to the airport?
5. We walked from the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.
6. You can put your coat over the back of the chair.
7. In tennis, you have to hit the ball over the net.
8. Silvia took a key from her bag and opened the door.
on

- on holiday
- on television
- on the radio
- on the phone
- on fire
- on time (= not late)

Jane isn't at work this week. She's on holiday.
We watched the news on TV.
We listened to the news on the radio.
I spoke to Rachel on the phone last night.
The house is on fire! Call the fire brigade.
'Was the train late?' 'No, it was on time.'

at

- at the age of 21
- at 50 kilometres an hour
- at 100 degrees etc.
  - Lisa got married at 21. (or... at the age of 21.)
  - A car uses more petrol at 120 kilometres an hour than at 90.
  - Water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.

by

- by car / by bus / by plane / by bike etc.
  - Do you like travelling by train?
  - Jane usually goes to work by bike.

  but on foot:
  - You can’t get there by car. You have to go on foot. (= you have to walk)

- a book by ...
- a painting by ...
- a piece of music by ...

  - Have you read any books by Charles Dickens?
  - Who is that painting by? Picasso?

- after the passive (→ Unit 21):
  - I was bitten by a dog.

with/without

- Did you stay at a hotel or with friends?
- Wait for me. Please don’t go without me.
- Do you like your coffee with or without milk?
- I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.

- a man with a beard / a woman with glasses etc.
  - Do you know that man with the beard?
  - I’d like to have a house with a big garden.

about

- talk/speak/think/hear/know about ...
  - Some people talk about their work all the time.
  - I don’t know much about cars.

- a book / a question / a programme / information (etc.) about ...
  - There was a programme about volcanoes on TV last night. Did you see it?
Exercises

111.1 Complete the sentences. Use **on** + these words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>holiday</th>
<th>the phone</th>
<th>the radio</th>
<th>TV</th>
<th>time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. We heard the news **on the radio**.
2. Please don’t be late. Try to be here **on** time.
3. I won’t be here next week. I’m going **on** holiday.
4. ‘Did you see Linda?’ ‘No, but I talked to her **on** the phone.’
5. ‘What’s **on** TV this evening?’ ‘Nothing that I want to watch.’

111.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **at**/by/with etc.

1. I cut the paper **with** a pair of scissors.
2. She usually goes to work **by** car.
3. Who is the woman **with** short hair?
4. They are talking **about** the weather.
5. The car is **on fire**.

6. She’s listening to some music **by** Mozart.
7. The plane is flying **at** 600 miles an hour.
8. They’re **on holiday**.
9. Do you know the man **with** sunglasses?

111.3 Complete the sentences. Use **at**/by/with etc.

1. In tennis, you hit the ball **at** a racket.
2. It's cold today. Don’t go out **without** a coat.
3. *Hamlet*, *Othello* and *Macbeth* are plays **by** William Shakespeare.
4. Do you know anything **about** computers?
5. My grandmother died **at** the age of 98.
6. How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles **by** plane?
7. I didn’t go to the football match, but I watched it **on** TV.
8. My house is the one **in front of** the red door on the right.
9. These trains are very fast. They can travel **at** very high speeds.
10. I don’t use my car very often. I prefer to go **on** bike.
11. Can you give me some information **about** hotels in this town?
12. I was arrested **by** two policemen and taken to the police station.
13. The buses here are very good. They’re nearly always **on time**.
14. What would you like to drink **with** your meal?
15. We travelled from Paris to Moscow **by** train.
16. The museum has some paintings **by** Rembrandt.
afraid of ... / good at ... etc. (adjective + preposition)

afraid of ... / scared of ...

angry with somebody
angry about something
different from ...
or different to ...
fed up with ...
full of ...
good at ...
interested in ...
made in ...
nice/kind of somebody to ...
be nice/kind to somebody

sorry about a situation
sorry for/about doing something
be/feel sorry for somebody

- Are you afraid of dogs?
- Why are you angry with me? What have I done?
- Are you angry about last night? (= something that happened last night)
- Lisa is very different from (or to) her sister.

- I'm fed up with my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
- The room was full of people.
- Are you good at maths?
- I'm not interested in sport.
- Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)

- It was kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.
- David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.

- I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm sorry about that.
- I'm sorry for/about not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)
- I feel sorry for them. They are in a very difficult situation.

of/at/for (etc.) + -ing

After a preposition (of/at/for etc.), a verb ends in -ing:

| I'm not very good at telling stories. |
| Are you fed up with doing the same thing every day? |
| I'm sorry for not phoning you yesterday. |
| Thank you for helping me. |
| Mark is thinking of buying a new car. |
| Tom left without saying goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye) |
| After doing the shopping, they went home. |
Exercises

112.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with of/with/in etc.

1. He's afraid of dogs.
2. She's interested in science.
3. She's married to a footballer.
4. She's very good at languages.
5. He's fed up with the weather.
6. A: Can I help you?
   B: Thanks, that's very kind of you.

112.2 Complete the sentences with in/of/with etc.

1. I'm not interested in sport.
2. I'm not very good at sport.
3. I like Sarah. She's always very kind to me.
4. I'm sorry about your broken window. It was an accident.
5. He's very brave. He isn't scared of anything.
6. It was very nice of Jane to let us stay in her apartment.
7. Life today is very different from life 50 years ago.
8. Are you interested in politics?
9. I feel sorry for her, but I can't help her.
10. Chris was angry about what happened.
11. These boxes are very heavy. They are full of books.
12. I'm sorry for getting angry with you yesterday.

112.3 Complete the sentences.

1. I'm not very good at telling stories. (good/tell)
2. I wanted to go to the cinema, but Paula wasn't interested in going. (interested/go)
3. Sue isn't very interested up in the morning. (good/get)
4. Let's go! I'm fed up waiting. (fed up/wait)
5. I'm sorry I woke you up in the middle of the night. (sorry/wake)
6. Sorry I'm late! I thank you for waiting. (thank you/wait)

112.4 Complete the sentences. Use without -ing.

1. (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) Tom left without saying goodbye.
2. (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak) Sue walked past me without speaking.
3. (Don't do anything / ask me first) Don't do anything without asking me first.
4. (I went out / I didn't lock the door) I went out without locking the door.

112.5 Write sentences about yourself.

1. (interested) I'm interested in sport.
2. (scared) I'm...
3. (not very good) I'm not...
4. (not interested) I'm not...
5. (fed up) I'm...

(Continued on the next page)
Listen to ..., look at ..., etc. (verb + preposition)

- ask (somebody) for ...
- belong to ...
- happen to ...
- listen to ...
- talk to somebody (about ...) 
- speak to somebody (about ...) 
- thank somebody for ...
- think about ... or think of ...
- wait for ...
- Don't ask me for money. I don't have any.
- This house doesn't belong to me. (= it's not mine)
- I can't find my phone. What's happened to it?
- Listen to this music. It's great.
- Did you talk to Paul about the problem?
- I'd like to speak to the manager, please.
- Thank you very much for your help.
- He never thinks about (or of) other people.
- Mark is thinking of (or about) buying a car.
- Wait for me. I'm nearly ready.

Note that we say call/phone/text/email somebody (no preposition):
- I have to phone my parents today. (not phone to my parents)
- Shall I text you or email you?

Look at / look for / look after

Look at ...
- He's looking at his watch.
- Look at these flowers! They're beautiful.
- Why are you looking at me like that?

Look for ...
(= try to find)
- She's lost her key. She's looking for it.
- I'm looking for Sarah. Have you seen her?

Look after ...
(= take care of, keep safe)
- When Emily is at work, a friend of hers looks after her children.
- Don't lose this book. Look after it. (= Keep it safe.)

Depend

We say depend on ...
- A: Do you like eating in restaurants?
  B: Sometimes. It depends on the restaurant. (not it depends of)

You can say it depends what/where/how (etc.) with or without on:
- A: Do you want to come out with us?
  B: It depends where you're going. or It depends on where you're going.
Exercises

113.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with to/for/at etc.

1 She's looking _at_ her watch.
2 He's listening _to_ the radio.
3 They're waiting _for_ a taxi.
4 Paul is talking _to_ Jane.
5 They're looking _at_ a picture.
6 Sue is looking _to_ Tom.

113.2 Complete the sentences with to/for/about etc. Two sentences are already complete, and no word is necessary.

1 Thank you very much _for_ your help.
2 This isn't my umbrella. It belongs _to_ a friend of mine.
3 I saw Steve, but I didn't speak _to_ him.
4 Don't forget to phone _to_ your mother tonight.
5 Thank you _to_ the present. It was lovely.
6 What happened _to_ Ella last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
7 We're thinking _about_ going to Australia next year.
8 We asked the waiter _for_ coffee, but he brought us tea.
9 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends _about_ the book.'
10 John was talking, but nobody was listening _to_ what he was saying.
11 We waited _for_ Karen until 2 o'clock, but she didn't come.
12 I texted _to_ Lisa to tell her I would be late.
13 He's alone all day. He never talks _to_ anybody.
14 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends _to_ the type of room.'
15 Catherine is thinking _about_ changing her job.

113.3 Complete these sentences. Use at/for/after.

1 I looked _after_ the letter, but I didn't read it carefully.
2 When you are ill, you need somebody to look _after_ you.
3 Excuse me, I'm looking _for_ Hill Street. Is it near here?
4 Bye! Have a great holiday and look _at_ yourself.
5 I want to take a picture of you. Please look _at_ the camera and smile.
6 Ben is looking _for_ a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

113.4 Answer these questions with It depends ....

Do you want to go out with us?
Do you like eating in restaurants?
Do you enjoy watching TV?
Can you do something for me?
Are you going away this weekend?
Can you lend me some money?

It depends where you're going.
It depends on the restaurant.
It depends
It
go in, fall off, run away etc.
(phrasal verbs 1)

A phrasal verb is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/up/down etc.

**in**
- I waited outside the shop. I didn’t go in.
- Sarah opened the door of the car and got in. (= into the car)

**out**
- I went to the window and looked out.
- The car stopped and a woman got out. (= out of the car)

**on**
- The bus came, and I got on.

**off**
- Be careful! Don’t fall off.

**up**
- He stood up and left the room.
- I usually get up early. (= get out of bed)
- We looked up at the stars in the sky.

**down**
- The picture fell down.
- Would you like to sit down?
- Lie down on the floor.

**away or off**
- The thief ran away (or ... ran off)
- Emma got into the car and drove away. (or ... drove off)
- Tom has gone away for a few days.

**back**
- Go away and don’t come back!
- We went out for dinner and then went back to our hotel.
- Tom is away. He’ll be back on Monday.

**over**
- The wall wasn’t very high, so we climbed over.
- Turn over and look at the next page.

**round (or around)**
- Somebody shouted my name, so I looked round (or around).
- We went for a long walk. After an hour we turned round (or around) and went back.
Exercises

114.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use these verbs + in/out/up etc.

[Got  got  looked  looked  rode  sat  turned  went]

1. I went to the window and _______.
2. The door was open, so we _______.
3. He heard a plane, so he _______.
4. She got on her bike and _______.
5. I said hello, and he _______.
6. The bus stopped, and she _______.
7. There was a free seat, so she _______.
8. A car stopped, and two men _______.

114.2 Complete the sentences. Use out/away/back etc.
1. 'What happened to the picture on the wall?' 'It fell _______.'
2. Wait a minute. Don't go _______. I want to ask you something.
3. Lisa heard a noise behind her, so she looked _______ to see what it was.
4. I'm going _______ now to do some shopping. I'll be _______ at 5 o'clock.
5. I'm feeling very tired. I'm going to lie _______ on the sofa.
6. When you have read this page, turn _______ and read the other side.
7. Mark is from Canada. He lives in London now, but he wants to go _______ to Canada.
8. We haven't got a key to the house, so we can't get _______.
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get _______.
10. a: When are you going _______?
    b: On the 5th. And I'm coming on the 24th.

114.3 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 6 (page 250). Complete the sentences.
Choose a verb from the box + on/off/up etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form.

[Break  carry  fall  give  go  hold  speak  take  wake] + on/off/up/down/over

1. I went to sleep at 10 o'clock and _______ up at 8 o'clock the next morning.
2. 'It's time to go.' '_______. I'm not ready yet.'
3. The train _______ and finally stopped.
4. I like flying, but I'm always nervous when the plane _______.
5. How are your children? How are they _______ at school?
6. It's difficult to hear you. Can you _______ a little?
7. This car isn't very good. It has _______ many times.
8. When babies try to walk, they sometimes _______.
9. The hotel isn't far from here. If you _______ along this road, you'll see it on the left.
10. I tried to find a job, but I _______. It was impossible.
11. The fire alarm _______ and everyone had to leave the building.
Sometimes a phrasal verb (put on / take off etc.) has an object. For example:

**verb** | **object**
--- | ---
put on | your coat

You can say:
- put on your coat
- put your coat on

But it/them (pronouns) always go before on/off etc.:
- put it on (not put on it)
- take them off (not take off them)

- It was cold, so I put on my coat.
- or ... I put my coat on.
- Here's your coat. Put it on.
- I'm going to take off my shoes.
- or ... take my shoes off.
- Your shoes are dirty. Take them off.

**Some more phrasal verbs + object:**

**turn on / turn off** (lights, machines, taps etc.):
- It was dark, so I turned on the light.
- or ... I turned the light on.
- I don't want to watch this programme. You can turn it off.

Also switch on / switch off (lights, machines etc.):
- I switched on the light and switched off the television.

**pick up / put down**:
- Those are my keys on the floor. Can you pick them up for me?
- I stopped reading and put my book down.
- or ... put down my book.

**bring back / take back / give back / put back**:
- You can take my umbrella, but please bring it back.
- I took my new sweater back to the shop. It was too small for me.
- I've got Rachel's keys. I have to give them back to her.
- I read the letter and then put it back in the envelope.
Exercises

115.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?

1 He ................................................................. 4 She .................................................................
2 She ................................................................. 5 He .................................................................
3 He ................................................................. 6 She .................................................................

115.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>I turned on the radio.</th>
<th>I turned the radio on.</th>
<th>I turned it on.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>He</td>
<td>He</td>
<td>He</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>She</td>
<td>She</td>
<td>She</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>He</td>
<td>She took her glasses off.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>She</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>They</td>
<td>We</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

115.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs with it or them.

bring back  pick up  switch off  take back  turn on

1 I wanted to watch something on TV, so I .................................................................
2 My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to .................................................................
3 There were some gloves on the floor, so I .................................................................
4 The heating was on but it was too warm, so I .................................................................
5 Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to .................................................................

115.4 Before you do this exercise, study the verbs in Appendix 7 (page 251). Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box. Sometimes you will also need to use it/them/me.

fill in  knock down  look up  show round  turn down

give up  knock over  put out  throw away  try on

1 They ................................................................. a lot of houses ................................................................. when they built the new road.
2 That music is very loud. Can you ................................................................. ?
3 I ................................................................. a glass and broke it.
4 'What does this word mean?' 'Why don't you ................................................................. ?'
5 I want to keep these magazines. Please don't ................................................................. .
6 I ................................................................. a pair of shoes in the shop, but I didn't buy them.
7 I visited a school last week. One of the teachers ................................................................. .
8 'Do you play the piano?' 'No, I started to learn, but I ................................................................. after a month.'
9 Somebody gave me a form and told me to ................................................................. your cigarette ................................................................. .
### Appendix 1

#### Active and passive

#### 1.1 Present and past

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>present simple</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We <strong>make</strong> butter from milk.</td>
<td>Butter is <strong>made</strong> from milk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody <strong>cleans</strong> these rooms every day.</td>
<td>These rooms are <strong>cleaned</strong> every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>People never <strong>invite</strong> me to parties.</td>
<td>I am never <strong>invited</strong> to parties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do they <strong>make</strong> butter?</td>
<td>How is butter <strong>made</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>past simple</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody <strong>stole</strong> my car last week.</td>
<td>My car was <strong>stolen</strong> last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody <strong>stole</strong> my keys yesterday.</td>
<td>My keys were <strong>stolen</strong> yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They <strong>didn't invite</strong> me to the party.</td>
<td>I wasn't <strong>invited</strong> to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When did they <strong>build</strong> these houses?</td>
<td>When were these houses <strong>built</strong>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>present continuous</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are <strong>building</strong> a new airport at the moment. (= it isn't finished)</td>
<td>A new airport is <strong>being built</strong> at the moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are <strong>building</strong> some new houses near the river.</td>
<td>Some new houses are <strong>being built</strong> near the river.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>past continuous</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, they were <strong>building</strong> a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)</td>
<td>When I was here a few years ago, a new airport was <strong>being built</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>present perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Look! They have <strong>painted</strong> the door.</td>
<td>Look! The door has been <strong>painted</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>These shirts are clean. Somebody has <strong>washed</strong> them.</td>
<td>These shirts are clean. They have been <strong>washed</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody has <strong>stolen</strong> my car.</td>
<td>My car has been <strong>stolen</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>past perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tina said that somebody had <strong>stolen</strong> her car.</td>
<td>Tina said that her car had been <strong>stolen</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1.2 Will / can / must / have to etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>active</th>
<th>passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Somebody <strong>will clean</strong> the office tomorrow.</td>
<td>The office will be <strong>cleaned</strong> tomorrow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody <strong>must clean</strong> the office.</td>
<td>The office must be <strong>cleaned</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think they’ll <strong>invite</strong> you to the party.</td>
<td>I think you’ll be <strong>invited</strong> to the party.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They <strong>can’t repair</strong> my watch.</td>
<td>My watch can’t be <strong>repaired</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You <strong>should wash</strong> this sweater by hand.</td>
<td>This sweater should be <strong>washed</strong> by hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They are <strong>going to build</strong> a new airport.</td>
<td>A new airport is <strong>going to be built</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somebody <strong>has to wash</strong> these clothes.</td>
<td>These clothes have to be <strong>washed</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They <strong>had to take</strong> the injured man to hospital.</td>
<td>The injured man had to be <strong>taken</strong> to hospital.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Appendix 2
### List of irregular verbs (→ Unit 24)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>infinitive</th>
<th>past simple</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td>lent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light</td>
<td>lit</td>
<td>lit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td>lost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read (reed)*</td>
<td>read (red)*</td>
<td>read (red)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td>stood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>taught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td>told</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>thought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td>worn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win</td>
<td>won</td>
<td>won</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some verbs can be regular (–ed) or irregular (–t):

- burn: burned or burnt
- dream: dreamed or dreamt
- learn: learned or learnt
- smell: smelt or smelt

*pronunciation
### Appendix 3

**Irregular verbs in groups**

**The past simple and past participle are the same:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lend</td>
<td>lent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burn</td>
<td>burnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learnt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamt</td>
<td>(dremt)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>(ment)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>(brort)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>(bort)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>(fort)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>thought</td>
<td>(thort)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>(kort)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td>(tort)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>told</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>(red)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>(sed)*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand</td>
<td>stood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand</td>
<td>understood</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The past simple and past participle are different:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>steal</td>
<td>stole</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wake</td>
<td>woke</td>
<td>woken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rise</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>risen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>saw</td>
<td>seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw</td>
<td>threw</td>
<td>thrown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>showed</td>
<td>shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>came</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>became</td>
<td>become</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*pronunciation*
Appendix 4
Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

4.1 In spoken English we usually pronounce 'I am' as one word. The short form (I'm) is a way of writing this:

- I am → I'm
- it is → it's
- they have → they've

When we write short forms, we use ' (an apostrophe):
- I'm — I'm
- he's — he's
- you have → you've
- she will → she'll

4.2 We use these forms with I/he/she etc.:

- am → 'm
- is → 's
- are → 're
- have → 've
- has → 's
- had → 'd
- will → 'll
- would → 'd

- I've got some new shoes.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

's = is or has:
- She's going out this evening. (she's going = she is going)
- She's gone out. (she's gone = she has gone)

'd = would or had:
- A: What would you like to eat?  
  B: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = I would like)
- I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost = I had lost)

Do not use 'm/s/d etc. at the end of a sentence (→ Unit 40):

- 'Are you tired?' 'Yes, I am.' (not Yes, I'm.)
- She isn't tired, but he is. (not he's)

4.3 We use short forms with I/you/he/she etc., but you can use short forms (especially 's) with other words too:

- Who's your favourite singer? (= who is)
- What's the time? (= what is)
- There's a big tree in the garden. (= there is)
- My sister's working in London. (= my sister is working)
- Paul's gone out. (= Paul has gone out)
- What colour's your car? (= What colour is your car?)
4.4 Negative short forms (→ Unit 43):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short Form</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>isn’t</td>
<td>isn’t (= is not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aren’t</td>
<td>aren’t (= are not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wasn’t</td>
<td>wasn’t (= was not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weren’t</td>
<td>weren’t (= were not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasn’t</td>
<td>hasn’t (= has not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haven’t</td>
<td>haven’t (= have not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hadn’t</td>
<td>hadn’t (= had not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don’t</td>
<td>don’t (= do not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doesn’t</td>
<td>doesn’t (= does not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>didn’t</td>
<td>didn’t (= did not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t</td>
<td>can’t (= cannot)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>couldn’t</td>
<td>couldn’t (= could not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>won’t</td>
<td>won’t (= will not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wouldn’t</td>
<td>wouldn’t (= would not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shouldn’t</td>
<td>shouldn’t (= should not)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mustn’t</td>
<td>mustn’t (= must not)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- We went to her house, but she wasn’t at home.
- ‘Where’s David?’ ‘I don’t know. I haven’t seen him.’
- You work all the time. You shouldn’t work so hard.
- I won’t be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

4.5 ’s (apostrophe + s)

’s can mean different things:

(1) ’s = is or has (→ section 4.2 of this appendix)
   - It’s raining. (= It is raining)
   - It’s stopped raining. (= It has stopped)

(2) let’s = let us (→ Units 35, 53)
   - It’s a lovely day. Let’s go out. (= Let us go out.)

(3) Kate’s camera = her camera
    my brother’s car = his car
    the manager’s office = his/her office etc.
    (→ Unit 64)

Compare:

- Kate’s camera was very expensive. (Kate’s camera = her camera)
- Kate’s a very good photographer. (Kate’s = Kate is)
- Kate’s got a new camera. (Kate’s got = Kate has got)
# Appendix 5
## Spelling

### 5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches etc.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun + s (plural)</th>
<th>Hotel → hotels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bird → birds</td>
<td>mistake → mistakes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb + s (he/she/it -s)</th>
<th>Remember → remembers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>think → thinks</td>
<td>live → lives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**But**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bus → buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish → dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch → watches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box → boxes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Also</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potato → potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do → does</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-f / -fe → -ves</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shelf → shelves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife → knives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but roof → roofs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-f / -fe → -ves</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shelf → shelves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife → knives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied etc.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-y → -ies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>study → studies (not studyes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>story → stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>try → tries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marry → marries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly → flies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y → -ied (→ Unit 11)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>study → studied (not studied)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marry → married</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y → -ier/-iest (→ Units 87, 90)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy → easier/easiest (not easyer/easiest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy → happier/happiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy → heaviest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lucky → luckier/luckiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funny → funnier/funniest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-y → -ily (→ Unit 86)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>easy → easily (not easily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy → happily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy → heavily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lucky → luckily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>holiday → holidays (not holiadies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stay → stays/stayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy → buys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>key → keys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**But**

| say → said |
| pay → paid |

*irregular verbs*
Appendix 5

5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive etc.) → -xing:
make → making write → writing come → coming dance → dancing

Verbs that end in -ie → -ying:
lie → lying die → dying tie → tying

5.4 stop → stopped, big → bigger etc.

Vowels and consonants:
Vowel letters: a e i o u
Consonant letters: b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a vowel + a consonant. For example: stop, big, get.
Before -ing/-ed/-er/-est, p/g/t etc. become pp/gg/tt etc.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V+C</th>
<th>V = vowel</th>
<th>C = consonant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stop ST O P p → pp</td>
<td>stopping</td>
<td>stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run  R U N n → nn</td>
<td>running</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get  G E T t → tt</td>
<td>getting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim SW I M m → mm</td>
<td>swimming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big  B I G g → gg</td>
<td>bigger</td>
<td>biggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hot  H O T t → tt</td>
<td>hotter</td>
<td>hottest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin TH I N n → nn</td>
<td>thinner</td>
<td>thinnest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This does not happen
(1) if the word ends in two consonant letters (C + C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>C+C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>help HE L P helping helped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work WO R K working worked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast FA S T faster fastest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V+V+C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>need N E E D needing needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wait W A I T waiting waited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap CH E A P cheaper cheapest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is not stressed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stress</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>happen HAP-pen → happening/happened (not happened)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visit VIS-it → visiting/visited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember re-MEM-ber → remembering/remembered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefer pre-FER (stress at the end) → preferring/preferred</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin be-GIN (stress at the end) → beginning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(4) if the word ends in -y or -w. (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.)

<p>| |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>enjoy → enjoying/enjoyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snow → snowing/snowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few → fewer/fewest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 6
Phrasal verbs (take off / give up etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (→ Unit 114).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>on</th>
<th>carry on = continue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Don’t stop working. Carry on. (= continue working)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A: Excuse me, where is the station?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B: Carry on along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along ...)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>also go on / walk on / drive on etc. = continue going/walking/driving etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Don’t stop here. Drive on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>come on = be quick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Come on! Everybody is waiting for you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>get on = manage (in a job, at school, in an exam etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How was your exam? How did you get on? (= how did you do?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hold on = wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can you hold on a minute? (= can you wait?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off</td>
<td>take off = leave the ground (for planes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The plane took off 20 minutes late, but arrived on time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>go off = explode (a bomb etc.) or ring (an alarm, an alarm clock etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A bomb went off and caused a lot of damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A car alarm goes off if somebody tries to break into the car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up</td>
<td>give up = stop trying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I know it’s difficult, but don’t give up. (= don’t stop trying)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>grow up = become an adult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>What does your son want to do when he grows up?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hurry up = do something more quickly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hurry up! We haven’t got much time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>speak up = speak more loudly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I can’t hear you. Can you speak up, please?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wake up = stop sleeping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I often wake up in the middle of the night.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>wash up = wash the plates etc. after a meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do you want me to wash up? (or ... to do the washing-up?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td>slow down = go more slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You’re driving too fast. Slow down!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>break down = stop working (for cars, machines etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sue was very late because her car broke down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over</td>
<td>fall over = lose your balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I fell over because my shoes were too big for me.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 7  Phrasal verbs + object (put out a fire / give up your job etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (→ Unit 115).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in/out</th>
<th>fill in / fill out a form = complete a form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can you fill in this form, please? or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can you fill out this form, please?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>out</th>
<th>put out a fire, a cigarette etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The fire brigade arrived and put the fire out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>out</th>
<th>cross out a mistake, a word etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If you make a mistake, cross it out.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>on</th>
<th>try on clothes = put on clothes to see if they fit you</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(in a shop) This is a nice jacket. Shall I try it on?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>up</th>
<th>give up something = stop doing it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sue gave up her job when her baby was born. (= she stopped working)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'Are you still learning Italian?' 'No, I gave it up.'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>up</th>
<th>look up a word in a dictionary etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I didn’t know the meaning of the word, so I looked it up in a dictionary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>up</th>
<th>turn up the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = make it louder or warmer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Can you turn the radio up? I can’t hear it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>up</th>
<th>wake up somebody who is sleeping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I have to get up early tomorrow. Can you wake me up at 6.30?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>down</th>
<th>knock down a building = demolish it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>They are going to knock down the school and build a new one.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>down</th>
<th>turn down the TV, radio, music, heating etc. = make it more quiet or less warm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The music is too loud. Can you turn it down?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>over</th>
<th>knock over a cup, a glass, a person etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Be careful. Don’t knock your cup over.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was knocked over by a car.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(or A man was knocked down by a car.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>away</th>
<th>throw away rubbish, things you don’t want</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>These apples are bad. Shall I throw them away?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Don’t throw away that picture. I want it.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>away</th>
<th>put something away = put it in the place where you usually keep it</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>After they finished playing, the children put their toys away.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>back</th>
<th>pay somebody back = give back money that you borrowed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thank you for lending me the money. I'll pay you back next week.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>round/around</th>
<th>show somebody round/around = take somebody on a tour of a place</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>We visited a factory last week. The manager showed us round.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Additional exercises

List of exercises:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exercise</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1–2</td>
<td><strong>am/is/are</strong></td>
<td>Units 1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Present continuous</td>
<td>Units 3–4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Present simple</td>
<td>Units 5–7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5–7</td>
<td>Present simple, <strong>am/is/are</strong> and <strong>have (got)</strong></td>
<td>Units 1–2, 5–7, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8–9</td>
<td>Present continuous and present simple</td>
<td>Units 3–8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10–13</td>
<td><strong>was/were</strong> and past simple</td>
<td>Units 10–12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Past simple and past continuous</td>
<td>Units 11–14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Present and past</td>
<td>Units 3–14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16–18</td>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>Units 15–19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19–22</td>
<td>Present perfect and past simple</td>
<td>Units 18–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Present, past and present perfect</td>
<td>Units 3–20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24–27</td>
<td>Passive</td>
<td>Units 21–22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Units 25–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Past, present and future</td>
<td>Units 3–20, 25–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td><strong>-ing</strong> and <strong>to ...</strong></td>
<td>Units 51–55, 105, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33–34</td>
<td><strong>a</strong> and <strong>the</strong></td>
<td>Units 65, 69–73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Prepositions</td>
<td>Units 103–108, 111</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**am/is/are**

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + **is/isn’t/are/aren’t**.

1. The windows are open.
2. Lisa isn’t happy.
3. Kate
4. Gary
5. The children
6. The books
7. The hotel
8. The bus

The windows - Lisa - Kate - The children - Gary - The books - The hotel - The bus

on the table
hungry
asleep
open
full
near the station
a doctor
happy

No, thank you.
Complete the sentences.
1 'Are you hungry?' 'No, but ______ thirsty.'
2 ' ______ your parents?' 'They're fine.'
3 'Is Anna at home?' 'No, ______ at work.'
4 ' ______ your keys?' 'On your desk.'
5 Where is Paul from? ______ American or British?
6 ______ very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees.
7 'Are you a teacher?' 'No, ______ a student.'
8 ' ______ your umbrella?' 'Green.'
9 Where's your car? ______ in the car park?
10 ' ______ tired?' 'No, I'm fine.'
11 'These shoes are nice. How ______ ?' 'Sixty pounds.'

Use the words in brackets to write sentences.
1 A: Where are your parents?
   B: ______ watching TV. (they / watch / TV)
2 A: Paula is going out.
   B: ______ she going? (where / she / go?)
3 A: Where's David?
   B: ______ have a shower? (he / have / a shower)
4 A: No, they're asleep.
   B: ______ at the moment. (it / rain?)
5 A: Where are Sue and Steve?
   B: ______ near here? (they / come / now)
6 A: ______ a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
7 I enjoy travelling, but ______ very much. (I / not / travel)
8 I want to go to the cinema, but ______ to go. (Sam / not / want)
9 ______ in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
10 My parents are usually at home in the evening.
    ______ very often. (they / not / go out)
11 ______ work at five o'clock. (Tom / always / finish)
12 A: What ______ ?
    B: ______ in a hotel. (Jessica / do / she / work)
Additional exercises

**present simple, am/is/are and have (got)**

Units 1–2, 5–7, 9

5 Read the questions and Clare’s answers. Then write sentences about Clare.

3. Are you a student? Yes.
4. Have you got a car? No.
5. Do you go out a lot? Yes.
6. Have you got a lot of friends? Yes.
8. Do you like dancing? Yes.

Clare

---

1. She isn’t married.
2. She lives in London.
3. She is.
4. She has.
5. She has.
6. She has.
7. She doesn’t.
8. She doesn’t.
9. She isn’t.

6 Complete the questions.

1. What’s your name? Ben.
   Married? Yes, I am.
   Where? In Barton Road.
   Any children? Yes, a daughter.
   How old? She’s three.

2. What’s your job? I work in a supermarket.
   Do you like it? No, I hate it.
   Do you have a car? Yes, I have.
   Do you go to work by car? No, I usually go by bus.

3. Who is this man? Michael.
   What’s he? He’s a travel agent.
   Where does he work? No, in Manchester.

7 Write sentences from these words. All the sentences are present.

1. Sarah often / tennis
   Sarah often plays tennis.

2. my parents / a new car
   My parents have got a new car.

3. my shoes / dirty
   My shoes are dirty.

4. Sonia / 32 years old
   Sonia

5. I / two sisters

6. we often / TV in the evening

7. Amy never / a hat

8. a bicycle / two wheels

9. these flowers / beautiful

10. Emma / German very well
8 Complete the sentences.

1. Please be quiet. I'm working... (I/work).
2. Do you often go... (you/often/go) to the cinema?
3. What... (you/cook)?
4. Jack... (play) the piano very well.
5. Now. Goodbye!
6. Can I take this umbrella?
7. (I/not/watch) TV very much.
8. Excuse me... (we/look) for the museum.
9. What's this word? How... (you/pronounce) it?

9 Which is right?

1. 'Are you speaking / Do you speak English?' 'Yes, a little.' (Do you speak is right)
2. Sometimes we're going / we go away at weekends.
3. It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
4. (You meet Kate in the street.) Hello, Kate. Where are you going / do you go?
5. How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
6. Emily is a writer. She's writing / she writes books for children.
7. I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
8. 'Where are Mark and Laura?' 'They're watching / they watch TV in the living room.'
9. Helen is in her office. She's talking / she talks to somebody.
10. What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
11. Joe isn't at home at the moment. He's visiting / he visits some friends.
12. 'Would you like some tea?' 'No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea.'
Additional exercises

was/were and past simple (I worked / did you work? etc.)

10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

1 I got up early and ...had... a shower.
2 Tom was tired last night, so he ...went to bed... early.
3 I ...found... this key on the floor. Is it yours?
4 Kate got married when she ...was... 23.
5 Helen is learning to drive. She ...took... her first lesson yesterday.
6 'I've got a new job.' ‘Yes, I know. David ...went to... me.’
7 'Where did you buy that book?' ‘It was a present. Amy ...bought... it to me.’
8 We ...were... hungry, so we had something to eat.
9 'Did you enjoy the film?' ‘Yes, I ...found... it very good.’
10 ‘Did Andy come to your party?’ ‘No, we ...told... him, but he didn’t come.’

11 Look at the questions and Joe’s answers. Write sentences about Joe when he was a child.

When you were a child ...
- Were you tall? No.
- Did you like school? Yes.
- Were you good at sport? Yes.
- Did you play football? Yes.
- Did you work hard at school? No.
- Did you have a lot of friends? Yes.
- Did you have a bike? No.
- Were you a quiet child? No.

Joe

No. 1 He wasn’t tall.
2 He liked school.
3 He
4
5
6
7
8

12 Complete the questions.

1 Did you have ...a nice holiday? Yes, it was great, thanks.
2 Where did you go ...there? To Amsterdam.
3
4
5
6
7
8

13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).

1 It was a good party. I enjoyed ...it. (I / enjoy)
2 ‘Did you do ...the shopping?’ (you / do) ‘No, I didn’t have ...time.’ (I / have)
3 ‘Did you phone Adam?’ ‘No, I’m afraid ...I forgot... .’ (I / forget)
4 I like your new watch. Where ...you get... it? (you / get)
5 I saw Lucy at the party, but ...I spoke... to her. (I / speak)
6 A: Did you have ...a nice weekend? (you / have)
   B: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
7 Paul wasn’t well yesterday, so ...he go... to work. (he / go)
8 ‘Is Mary here?’ ‘Yes, ...she arrived... five minutes ago.’ (she / arrive)
9 Where ...Robert live... before he moved here? (Robert / live)
10 The restaurant wasn’t expensive. ...the meal cost... very much. (the meal / cost)
Complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.

**Past Simple** (I worked) and **Past Continuous** (I was working)

**Units 11–14**

1. I ................................................ (open) the window because it was hot.

2. The doorbell ................................................ (ring) when Sue ................................................ (cook).

3. I ................................................ (hear) a noise outside, so I ................................................ (look) out of the window.

4. Tom ................................................ (look) out of the window when the accident ................................................ (happen).

5. Richard had a book in his hand, but he ................................................ (not/read) it. He ................................................ (watch) TV.

6. Catherine bought a magazine, but she ................................................ (not/read) it. She didn’t have time.

7. I ................................................ (finish) my meal, ................................................ (pay) the bill and ................................................ (leave) the restaurant.

8. When I arrived at the office, Lisa and Paul ................................................ (work) at their desks.

9. It ................................................ (rain) when we ................................................ (go) out.

10. I ................................................ (see) Kate this morning. I ................................................ (walk) along the street and she ................................................ (wait) for the bus.
15  **Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:**

- **present simple** (*I work/drive* etc.)
- **present continuous** (*I am working/driving* etc.)
- **past simple** (*I worked/drove* etc.)
- **past continuous** (*I was working/driving* etc.)

1. You can turn off the television. I **am not watching** it.
2. Last night Jenny **fell** asleep while she **was reading**.
3. Listen! Somebody **is playing** the piano.
4. ‘Have you got my key?’ ‘No, I **haven’t given** it back to you.’
5. David is very lazy. He **doesn’t like** hard work.
6. Where **did you go** for your holidays last year?
7. I **saw** Laura yesterday. She **drove** her new car.
8. A: **Do you watch** TV much?  
   B: No, I haven’t got a TV.
9. A: What **did you do** at 6 o’clock last Sunday morning?  
   B: I was in bed asleep.
10. Andy isn’t at home very much. He **has gone** away a lot.
11. I **am trying** to find a job at the moment. It’s not easy.
12. I’m tired this morning. I **didn’t sleep** very well last night.

16  **Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.**

1. Goodbye, Tom!  
   5 minutes later  
   Is Tom at home?  
   No, **he’s just gone out**.
2. Who’s that man?  
   I **don’t know.**  
   I **‘ve never seen** him before.
3. Are you still watching the film?  
   No, it **just ended**.
4. I’m looking for my glasses.  
   Here they are!  
   I **found them**.
5. Bookshop

Is this a good book?

I don't know.

6. I'm looking for Jessica.

Yes, she was here a few minutes ago.

7. More coffee?

No, thanks. I'm enough.

8. Paul was asleep in the armchair.

He up.

9. Hi. We later to the cinema.

10. Enjoy the party!

Where are Steve and Jane?

11. Paul was asleep in the armchair.

He up.

12. How long here?

13. The weather is horrible here.

It all day.

14. Alan? Yes, we each other for a long time.
Additional exercises

17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).
1 Mark and Sarah are married. They have been married for five years.
2 David has been watching TV since 5 o'clock.
3 Joe is at work. He has been at work since 8.30.
4 'Have you just arrived in London?' 'No, I've been here five days.'
5 I've known Helen we were at school together.
6 'My brother lives in Los Angeles.' 'Really? How long there?'
7 George has had the same job 20 years.
8 Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They here since Monday.

Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.
1 I've never ridden a horse.
2 I've been to London many times.
3 I've just (once / twice / a few times / many times)
4 I've (once / twice / a few times / many times)
5 I haven't (once / twice / a few times / many times) yet.
6 I've never (once / twice / a few times / many times)
7 I've (once / twice / a few times / many times) since
8 I've (once / twice / a few times / many times) for

Present perfect (I have done etc.) and past simple (I did etc.)

19 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).
1 A: Do you like London?
B: I don't know. I haven't been there.
2 A: Have you seen Kate?
B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
3 A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?
B: Yes, I bought it last week.
4 A: Are you tired this morning?
B: Yes, I went to bed late last night.
5 A: Do you want this newspaper, or can I have it?
B: You can have it. I read it.
6 A: Are you enjoying your new job?
B: I haven't enjoyed it yet. My first day is next Monday.
7 A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?
B: No, but it was very nice yesterday.
8 A: Was Helen at the party on Saturday?
B: I don't think so. I didn't see her there.
9 A: Is your son still at school?
B: No, he left school two years ago.
10 A: Is Silvia married?
B: Yes, she's been married for five years.
11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?
B: Of course. He was the first President of the United States.
12 A: How long does it take to make a pizza?
B: I don't know. I haven't made a pizza.
20 Write sentences with the present perfect or past simple.

1 A: Have you been to Thailand?
   B: Yes, I went there last year.
2 A: Do you like London?
   B: I don’t know. I’ve never been there.
3 A: What time is Paul going out?
   B: He has already gone.
4 A: Has Catherine gone home?
   B: Yes, she left at 4 o’clock.
5 A: New York is my favourite city.
   B: Is it? How many times have you been there?
6 A: What are you doing this weekend?
   B: I don’t know. I haven’t decided yet.
7 A: I can’t find my address book. Have you seen it?
   B: It was on the table last night.
8 A: Do you know the Japanese restaurant in Leeson Street?
   B: Yes, I’ve eaten there a few times.
9 A: Paula and Sue are here.
   B: Are they? What time did they arrive?

21 Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.

1 A: Have you been to France?
   B: Yes, many times.
   A: When did you go there?
   B: Two years ago.

2 A: Is this your car?
   B: Yes, it is.
   A: How long have you had it?
   B: It’s new. I bought it yesterday.

3 A: Where do you live?
   B: In Harold Street.
   A: How long have you lived there?
   B: Five years. Before that I lived in Mill Road.
   A: How long have you lived in Mill Road?
   B: About three years.

4 A: What do you do?
   B: I work in a shop.
   A: How long have you worked there?
   B: Nearly two years.
   A: What did you do before that?
   B: I was a taxi driver.
**Additional exercises**

22 Write sentences about yourself.
1 (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.
2 (last night) ...............................................................................................
3 (yesterday afternoon) ...............................................................................................
4 (... days ago) ...............................................................................................
5 (last week) .............................................................................................................................
6 (last year) ...............................................................................................

**present, past and present perfect**

Units 3–20

23 Which is right?

1 ‘Is Sue working?’ (C) ‘No, she's on holiday.’
   A Does Sue work? B Is working Sue? C Is Sue working? D Does work Sue?

2 ‘Where ................................................................................?’ ‘In a village near London.’
   A lives your uncle B does your uncle live C your uncle lives D does live your uncle

3 I speak Italian, but ................................................................................French.
   A I speak not B I'm not speaking C I doesn't speak D I don't speak

4 ‘Where's Tom?’ ‘ ..............................................................................a shower at the moment.’
   A He's having B He have C He has D He has had

5 Why ................................................................................angry with me yesterday?
   A were you B was you C you were D have you been

6 My favourite film is Cleo's Dream. ................................................................................it four times.
   A I'm seeing B I see C I was seeing D I've seen

7 I ................................................................................out last night. I was too tired.
   A don't go B didn't went C didn't go D haven't gone

8 Tina is from Chicago. She ................................................................................there all her life.
   A is living B has lived C lives D lived

9 My friend ................................................................................for me when I arrived.
   A waited B has waited C was waiting D has been waiting

10 ‘How long ................................................................................English?’ ‘Six months.’
   A do you learn B are you learning C you are learning D have you been learning

11 Paul is Canadian, but he lives in France. He has been there ................................................................................
   A for three years B since three years C three years ago D during three years

12 ‘What time ................................................................................?’ ‘About an hour ago.’
   A has Lisa phoned B Lisa has phoned C did Lisa phone D is Lisa phoning

13 What ................................................................................when you saw her?
   A did Sue wear B was Sue wearing C has Sue worn D was wearing Sue

14 ‘Can you drive?’ ‘No, ................................................................................a car, but I want to learn.’
   A I never drive B I'm never driving C I've never driven D I was never driving

15 I saw Helen at the station when I was going to work this morning, but she................................................................................me.
   A didn't see B don't see C hasn't seen D didn't saw
Complete the sentences.

These houses were built (build) 20 years ago. Before that there was a cinema here, but the building was damaged in a fire and had to be knocked down.

This bridge was built (build) in 1955. It is used (use) by hundreds of people every day. At the moment the bridge is being painted.

This street is called (call) Wilton Street. It used to be called James Street, but the name was changed a few years ago.

Complete the sentences.

1. We were invited (invite) to the party, but we didn't go.
2. The museum is very popular. Every year it is visited (visit) by thousands of people.
3. Many buildings were damaged (damage) in the storm last week.
4. A new road is going to be built (build) next year.
5. ‘Where's your jacket?’ ‘It has been cleaned (clean). It will be ready tomorrow.’
6. She's famous now, but in a few years her name will be forgotten (forget).
7. ‘Shall I do the washing-up?’ ‘No, it has already been done (already/do).’
8. Milk should be kept (keep) in a fridge.
9. Have you ever been bitten (you/ever/bite) by a snake?
10. My bag has been stolen (steal) from my car yesterday afternoon.

Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

1. Somebody has stolen my keys. My keys have been stolen.
2. Somebody stole my car last week. My car has been stolen.
3. Somebody has eaten all the bananas. All the bananas have been eaten.
4. Somebody will repair the machine. The machine will be repaired.
5. Somebody is watching us. We are being watched.
6. Somebody has to do the housework. The housework has to be done.
Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

1. They are building (build) a new airport at the moment.
2. These shirts are clean now. They have been washed (wash).
3. 'How did you fall?' 'Somebody pushed (push) me.'
4. 'How did you fall?' 'I pushed (pushed).'
5. I can't find my bag. Somebody took (take) it!
6. My watch is broken. It is being repaired (repair) at the moment.
7. Who invented (invent) the camera?
8. When was the camera invented (the camera/invent)?
9. These shirts are clean now. They were washed (wash).
10. These shirts are clean now. I washed (wash) them.
11. The letter was for me, so why didn't they send (they/send) it to you?
12. The information will be sent (send) to you as soon as possible.

Which is the best alternative?

1. We're having (B) a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.
   A. We have        B. We're having        C. We'll have

2. Do you know about Karen? She's leaving (leave) her job. She told me last week.
   A. She leaves      B. She's going to leave  C. She'll leave

3. There's a programme on TV that I want to watch. It's starting (start) in five minutes.
   A. It starts       B. It's starting       C. It will start

4. The weather is nice now, but I think it will rain (rain) later.
   A. it rains        B. it's raining      C. it will rain

5. 'What are you doing (do) next weekend?' 'Nothing. I've got no plans.'
   A. do you do       B. are you doing     C. will you do

6. 'When you see Tina, can you ask her to phone me?' 'OK, I'll ask (ask) her.'
   A. I ask           B. I'm going to ask   C. I'll ask

7. 'What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?' 'I'll have (have) tea, please.'
   A. I have          B. I'm going to have  C. I'll have

8. Don't take that magazine away. I'll read (read) it.
   A. I read          B. I'm going to read   C. I'll read

9. Rachel is ill, so she won't come (not come) to the party tomorrow night.
   A. she doesn't come B. she isn't coming   C. she won't come

10. I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time is her train arriving (arrive)?
    A. does her train arrive        B. is her train going to arrive   C. is her train arriving

11. 'Will you be at home tomorrow evening?' 'No, I'm going out (go out).'
    A. I go out          B. I'm going out       C. I'll go out

12. 'Are you coming (come) you tomorrow?' 'Yes, OK.'
    A. Do I phone        B. Am I going to phone   C. Shall I phone
**Additional exercises**

**past, present and future**

**Units 3–20, 25–28**

**29 Complete the sentences.**

1. **A:** __**Did you go**__ (you/go) out last night?
   **B:** No, __**(I/stay)**__ at home.
   **A:** What __**(you/do)**__?
   **B:** __**(I/watch)**__ TV.
   **A:** __**(you/go)**__ out tomorrow night?
   **B:** Yes, __**(I/go)**__ to the cinema.
   **A:** Which film __**(you/see)**__?
   **B:** __**(I/not/know)**__. __**(I/not/decide)**__ yet.

2. **A:** Are you on holiday here?
   **B:** Yes, we are.
   **A:** How long __**(you/be)**__ here?
   **B:** __**(we/arrive)**__ yesterday.
   **A:** And how long __**(you/stay)**__?
   **B:** Until the end of next week.
   **A:** And __**(you/like)**__ it here?
   **B:** Yes, __**(we/have)**__ a wonderful time.

3. **A:** __**(I/go)**__ out with Chris and Steve this evening.
   **B:** __**(you/want)**__ to come with us?
   **A:** To the Italian restaurant in North Street. __**(you/ever/eat)**__ there?
   **B:** Yes, __**(I/be)**__ there two or three times. In fact I __**(go)**__ there last night, but I'd love to go again!

4. **A:** __**(I/lose)**__ my glasses again.
   **B:** __**(you/see)**__ them?
   **A:** __**(you/wear)**__ them when __**(I/come)**__ in.
   **A:** __**(I/not/wear)**__ them now, so where are they?
   **B:** __**(you/look)**__ in the kitchen?
   **A:** No, __**(I/go)**__ and look now.
30 Rachel is talking about her best friend, Carolyn. Put the verbs in the correct form.

Carolyn is my best friend. I remember very well the first time
(1) ................................................................ (we/meet). It was our first day at secondary
school, and (2) .............................................................. (we/sit) next to each other for
the first lesson. (3) ................................................................ (we/not/know) any other
students in our class, and so (4) .............................................................. (we/become)
friends. We found that (5) ................................................................ (we/like) the same
things, especially music and sport, and so (6) ..............................................................
(we/spend) a lot of time together.

(7) ................................................................ (we/leave) school five years ago, but
(8) ................................................................ (we/meet) as often as we can. For the last
six months Carolyn (9) ................................................................ (be) in Mexico – at
the moment (10) ................................................................ (she/work) in a school as a
teaching assistant. (11) ................................................................ (she/come) back to
England next month, and when (12) ................................................................ (she/come)
back, (13) ................................................................ (we/have) lots of things to talk about.
(14) ................................................................ (it/be) really nice to see her again.

31 Nick and his friend Jon are travelling round the world. Read the emails between Nick and his
parents, and put the verbs in the correct form.

Dear Mum and Dad
We’re in Los Angeles, the first stop on our round-the-world
trip! (1) ................................................................ (we/arrive) here yesterday, and now
(2) ................................................................ (we/stay) at a hotel near the airport.
The flight was twelve hours, but (3) ................................................................ (we/enjoy) it. (4) ................................................................ (we/watch) some
films and (5) ................................................................ (sleep) a few hours,
which is unusual for me – usually (6) ................................................................
(I/not/sleep) well on planes.

Today is a rest day for us and (7) ................................................................ (we/not/do)
anything special, but tomorrow
(8) ................................................................ (we/go) to Hollywood
(9) ................................................................ (see) the film studios.
(10) ................................................................ (we/not/decide) yet what
to do after Los Angeles. Jon (11) ................................................................ (want)
to drive up the coast to San Francisco, but I’d prefer
(12) ................................................................ (go) south to San Diego.

I hope all is well with you – (13) ................................................................
(I/send) you another email next week.

Love
Nick
Dear Nick

Thanks for your mail. It’s good to hear that (14) (you/have) a good time.
We’re fine – Ellie and Jo (15) (work) hard for their exams next month.
Dad has been busy at work and last week (16) (he/have) a lot of important meetings. He’s a little tired – I think (17) (he/need) a good holiday.

Keep in touch!

Love

Mum

A month later …

Hi Mum and Dad

(18) (we/be) in California for a month now. (19) (we/get) back to Los Angeles yesterday after (20) (see) many wonderful places.
I think the place (21) (I/like) most was Yosemite National Park – it’s beautiful there and (22) (we/go) cycling a lot. The day before (23) (we/leave), Jon (24) (have) an accident on his bike. Luckily (25) (he/not/injure), but the bike (26) (damage).

(27) (we/change) our travel plans since my last message: now (28) (we/leave) for Hawaii on Monday (not Tuesday).
(29) (we/stay) there for a week before (30) (fly) to New Zealand. (31) (that/be) different, I’m sure!

All the best to Ellie and Jo for their exams.

Love

Nick

Hi Nick

Have a good time in Hawaii! Ellie and Jo (32) (finish) their exams yesterday – (33) (I/let) you know when (34) (we/get) the results.

We’re all OK. Dad and I (35) (look) forward to our holiday next month. (36) (we/go) to Italy for two weeks – (37) (we/send) you an email from there.

Take care!

Love

Mum
Which is correct?

1. Don’t forget to switch (B) off the light before you go out.
   A. switch  B. to switch  C. switching

2. It’s late. I must go (C) now.
   A. go  B. to go  C. going

3. I’m sorry, but I don’t have time to talk (B) to you now.
   A. for talking  B. to talk  C. talking

4. Gary is always in the kitchen. He enjoys cooking (C).
   A. cook  B. to cook  C. cooking

5. We’ve decided to go (B) away for a few days.
   A. go  B. to go  C. going

6. You’re making too much noise. Can you please stop shouting (C)?
   A. shout  B. to shout  C. shouting

7. Would you like to come (B) and eat with us on Sunday?
   A. come  B. to come  C. coming

8. That bag is too heavy for you. Let me help (C) you.
   A. help  B. to help  C. helping

9. There’s a swimming pool near my house. I go swimming (C) every day.
   A. to swim  B. to swimming  C. swimming

10. I need to go shopping to buy (B) some food.
    A. to buy  B. for buy  C. for buying

11. I’d love to have (B) a car like yours.
    A. have  B. to have  C. having

12. Could you help (B) me with this bag, please?
    A. help  B. to help  C. helping

13. I don’t mind sitting (C) here, but I’d prefer to sit by the window.
    A. sit  B. to sit  C. sitting

14. Do you want me to help (B) you?
    A. that I help  B. me to help  C. me helping

15. You should think carefully before making (B) an important decision.
    A. make  B. to make  C. making

16. I wasn’t feeling very well, but the medicine made me feel (B) better.
    A. feel  B. to feel  C. feeling

17. Shall I phone the restaurant to reserve (B) a table?
    A. for reserve  B. for reserving  C. to reserve

18. Tom looked at me without saying (B) anything.
    A. say  B. saying  C. to say
Complete the sentences.

1. Can you pass the sugar, please?
2. Have you got?
3. Do you have any milk?
4. What do you do?
5. I don’t feel very well. I don’t want to go to
6. What did you do last night?
7. Shall we walk home?
8. Can you play?
9. I’m interested in
10. What’s the difference between those cars?

Answers:
1. the sugar
2. I'm
3. Yes, there's some in
4. I went to
5. 45 - 10 = 35
6. THE END
7. No, let’s get
8. Yes, but not very well.
9. Nothing, they're
10. Nothing, they're
Additional exercises

34 Write a/an or the if necessary. If a/an/the are not necessary, leave an empty space (-).

1 Who is the best player in your team?
2 I don’t watch TV very often.
3 ‘Is there a bank near here?’ ‘Yes, at the end of this street.’
4 I can’t ride horse.
5 sky is very clear tonight.
6 Do you live here, or are you tourist?
7 What did you have for lunch?
8 Who was first President of United States?
9 I’m not feeling very good. I’ve got headache.
10 I’m sorry, but I’ve forgotten your name. I can never remember names.
11 What time is next train to London?
12 Kate doesn’t often send emails. She prefers to call people.
13 ‘Where’s Sue?’ ‘She’s in garden.’
14 Excuse me, I’m looking for Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15 Gary was ill last week, so he didn’t go to work.
16 Everest is highest mountain in world.
17 I usually listen to radio while I’m having breakfast.
18 I like sport. My favourite sport is basketball.
19 Emily is doctor. Her husband is art teacher.
20 My apartment is on second floor. Turn left at top of stairs, and it’s on right.
21 After dinner, we watched TV.
22 Last year we had wonderful holiday in south of France.

35 Write a preposition (in/for/by etc.).

1 Helen is studying law at university.
2 What is the longest river in Europe?
3 Is there anything on TV this evening?
4 We arrived at the hotel after midnight.
5 ‘Where’s Mark?’ ‘He’s on holiday.’
6 Tom hasn’t got up yet. He’s still in bed.
7 Lisa is away. She’s been away from Monday.
8 The next meeting is on 15 April.
9 I usually go to work by car.
10 There’s too much sugar in my coffee.
11 Joe lived in London for six months. He didn’t like it very much.
12 Were there a lot of people at the party?
13 What are you doing at the moment? Are you working?
14 I don’t know any of the people in this photo.
15 The train was very slow. It stopped at every station.
16 I like this room. I like the pictures on the walls.
17 ‘Did you buy that picture?’ ‘No, it was given to me by a friend of mine.’
18 I’m going away for a few days. I’ll be back by Thursday.
19 Silvia has gone to Italy. She’s in Milan at the moment.
20 Emma left school at sixteen and got a job in a shop.
If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative (A, B, C etc.) is right. SOMETIMES MORE THAN ONE ALTERNATIVE IS CORRECT.

If you don’t know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The key to this study guide is on page 313.

---

### IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

#### Present

1.1 Can you close the window, please?
   - A I cold
   - B I'm cold
   - C I have cold
   - D It has cold

1.2 Lisa
   - A isn't interested
   - B not interested
   - C doesn't interested
   - D doesn't interest

1.3 '?
   - A Is at home your mother
   - B Does your mother at home
   - C Is your mother at home
   - D Are your mother at home

1.4 These shoes are nice.
   - A How much are they?
   - B How many are they?
   - C How much they are?
   - D How much is they?

1.5 Look, there's Sarah.
   - A She wearing
   - B She has wearing
   - C She is wearing
   - D She's wearing

1.6 You can turn off the television.
   - A I'm not watch
   - B I'm not watching
   - C I not watching
   - D I don't watching

1.7 ?
   - A Is working Ben
   - B Is work Ben
   - C Is Ben work
   - D Is Ben working

1.8 Look, there's Emily!
   - A Where she is going?
   - B Where she go?
   - C Where's she going?
   - D Where she going?

1.9 The earth
   - A going
   - B go
   - C goes
   - D does go
   - E is go

1.10 We
   - A often go
   - B go often
   - C often going
   - D are often go

1.11 We
   - A not watch
   - B doesn't watch
   - C don't watch
   - D don't watching
   - E watch not

1.12 ?
   - A Do you play
   - B Are you play
   - C Does you play
   - D Do you playing
   - E Play you

1.13 I don't understand this sentence. What?
   - A mean this word
   - B means this word
   - C does mean this word
   - D does this word mean
   - E this word means
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

1.14 Please be quiet.  
   A I working.  B I work.  C I'm working.  D I'm work.

1.15 Tom  a shower every morning.  
   A has  B having  C is having  D have

1.16 What  at weekends?  
   A do you usually  B are you usually doing  C are you usually do  
   D do you usually do  E do you usually

1.17 Sarah isn't feeling well.  a headache.  
   A She have  B She have got  C She has  D She's got

1.18 They  any children.  
   A don't have  B doesn't have  C no have  D haven't got  E hasn't got

Past

2.1 The weather  last week.  
   A is good  B was good  C were good  D good  E had good

2.2 Why  late this morning?  
   A you was  B did you  C was you  D you were  E were you

2.3 Terry  in a bank from 2005 to 2011.  
   A work  B working  C works  D worked  E was work

2.4 Caroline  to the cinema three times last week.  
   A go  B went  C goes  D got  E was

2.5 I  TV yesterday.  
   A didn't watch  B didn't watched  C wasn't watched  
   D don't watch  E didn't watching

2.6 ‘How  ?’  ‘I don't know. I didn't see it.’  
   A happened the accident  B did happen the accident  
   C does the accident happen  D did the accident happen  
   E the accident happened

2.7 What  at 11.30 yesterday?  
   A were you doing  B was you doing  C you were doing  
   D were you do  E you was doing

2.8 Jack was reading a book when his phone  .  
   A ringing  B ring  C rang  D was ringing  E was ring

2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They  at the bus stop.  
   A waiting  B waited  C were waiting  D was waiting  E were waited

Present perfect

3.1 ‘Where's Rebecca?’ ‘  to bed.’  
   A She is gone  B She has gone  C She goes  D She have gone  
   E She's gone

3.2 ‘Are Laura and Paul here?’ ‘No, they  .’  
   A don't arrive yet  B have already arrived  C haven't already arrived  
   D haven't arrived yet
3.3 My sister __________ by plane.
A has never travel  B has never travelled  C is never travelled  D has never been travelled  E have never travelled

3.4 __________ that woman before, but I can't remember where.
A I see  B I seen  C I've saw  D I've seen  E I've seeing

3.5 'How long __________ married? ' ‘Since 2007.'
A you are  B you have been  C has you been  D are you  E have you been

3.6 'Do you know Lisa?' 'Yes, __________ her for a long time.'
A I knew  B I've known  C I know  D I am knowing

3.7 Richard has been in Canada ________________.
A for six months  B since six months  C six months ago  D in six months

3.8 'When did Tom go out?' ‘__________________’
A For ten minutes.  B Since ten minutes.  C Ten minutes ago.
D In ten minutes.

3.9 We ________________ a holiday last year.
A don't have  B haven't had  C hasn't had  D didn't have  E didn't had

3.10 Where ________________ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you.
A you were  B you have been  C was you  D have you been  E were you

Passive
4.1 This house ________________ 100 years ago.
A is built  B is building  C was building  D was built  E built

4.2 We ________________ to the party last week.
A didn't invite  B didn't invited  C weren't invited  D wasn't invited  E haven't been invited

4.3 ‘Where ________________ born?’ ‘In Cairo.’
A you are  B you were  C was you  D are you  E were you

4.4 My car is at the garage. It ________________.
A is being repaired  B is repairing  C have been repaired  D repaired  E repairs

4.5 I can't find my keys. I think ________________.
A they've been stolen  B they are stolen  C they've stolen  D they're being stolen

Verb forms
5.1 It ________________, so we didn't need an umbrella.
A wasn't rained  B wasn't rain  C didn't raining  D wasn't raining

5.2 Somebody ________________ this window.
A has broke  B has broken  C has breaked  D has break.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT</th>
<th>STUDY UNIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1 Andrew ______________________ tennis tomorrow.</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A is playing   B play   C plays   D is play</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2 ______________________ out tonight?</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Are you going   B Are you go   C Do you go   D Go you   E Do you going</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3 ‘What time is the concert tonight?’ ‘It ______________________ at 7.30.’</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A is start   B is starting   C starts   D start   E starting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4 ______________________ to the wedding next week?</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A are you wearing   B are you going to wear   C do you wear   D you are going to wear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5 I think Kelly ______________________ the exam.</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A passes   B will pass   C will be pass   D will passing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6 ______________________ to the cinema on Saturday. Do you want to come with us?</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A We go   B We’ll go   C We’re going   D We will going</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7 ‘____________________ you tomorrow, OK?’ ‘OK, bye.’</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I phone   B I phoning   C I’m phoning   D I’ll phone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.8 ______________________ tomorrow, so I can’t meet you.</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I work   B I’ll work   C I’m working   D I’ll working</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.9 It’s a nice day. ______________________ for a walk?</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Do we go   B Shall we go   C Are we go   D We go   E Go we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Modals, imperative etc.</strong></td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1 ______________________ to the cinema this evening, but I’m not sure.</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A I’ll go   B I’m going   C I may go   D I might go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2 ‘____________________ here?’ ‘Yes, of course.’</td>
<td>29, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Can I sit   B Do I sit   C May I sit   D Can I to sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3 I’m having a party next week, but Paul and Rachel ______________________.</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A can’t come   B can’t to come   C can’t coming   D couldn’t come</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4 Before Maria came to Britain, she ______________________ understand much English.</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A can   B can’t   C not   D couldn’t   E doesn’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5 We ______________________ walk home last night. There were no buses.</td>
<td>31, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A have to   B had to   C must   D must to   E must have</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6 I ______________________ go yet. I can stay a little longer.</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A must   B mustn’t   C must not   D don’t need   E don’t need to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7 It’s a good film. You ______________________ go and see it.</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A should to   B ought to   C ought   D should   E need</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8 What time ______________________ go to the dentist tomorrow?</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A you must   B you have to   C have you to   D do you have to</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.9 We ______________________ wait long for the bus – it came in a few minutes.</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A don’t have to   B hadn’t to   C didn’t have to   D didn’t had to   E mustn’t</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

#### 7.10
'................................................some coffee?' ‘No, thank you.’
- **A** Are you liking
- **B** You like
- **C** Would you like
- **D** Do you like

#### 7.11
Please .................................................. Stay here with me.
- **A** don’t go
- **B** you no go
- **C** go not
- **D** you don’t go

#### 7.12
Dave ................................................in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.
- **A** working
- **B** works
- **C** worked
- **D** use to work
- **E** used to work

### There and it

#### 8.1
Excuse me, ................................................a hotel near here?
- **A** has there
- **B** is there
- **C** there is
- **D** is it

#### 8.2
................................................a lot of accidents on this road. It’s very dangerous.
- **A** Have
- **B** it has
- **C** there have
- **D** they are
- **E** There are

#### 8.3
I was hungry when I got home, but ............................................... anything to eat.
- **A** there wasn’t
- **B** there weren’t
- **C** it wasn’t
- **D** there hasn’t been

#### 8.4
................................................three kilometres from our house to the city centre.
- **A** It’s
- **B** it has
- **C** there is
- **D** there are

#### 8.5
................................................true that you’re going away?
- **A** is there
- **B** is it
- **C** is
- **D** Are you

### Auxiliary verbs

#### 9.1
I haven’t got a car, but my sister ............................................... .
- **A** have
- **B** is
- **C** has
- **D** hasn’t
- **E** has got

#### 9.2
I don’t like hot weather, but Sue ............................................... .
- **A** does
- **B** doesn’t
- **C** do
- **D** does like
- **E** likes

#### 9.3
‘Nicola got married last week.’ ‘................................................ Really?’
- **A** Is she?
- **B** Got she?
- **C** Did she?
- **D** Has she?

#### 9.4
You haven’t met my mother, ............................................... ?
- **A** haven’t you
- **B** have you
- **C** did you
- **D** you have
- **E** you haven’t

#### 9.5
Ben doesn’t watch TV. He doesn’t read newspapers ............................................... .
- **A** too
- **B** either
- **C** neither
- **D** never

#### 9.6
‘I’d like to go to Australia.’ ‘................................................’
- **A** So do I.
- **B** So am I.
- **C** So would I.
- **D** Neither do I.
- **E** So I would.

#### 9.7
Sue ................................................much at weekends.
- **A** don’t
- **B** doesn’t
- **C** don’t do
- **D** doesn’t do

### Questions

#### 10.1
‘When ................................................?’ ‘I’m not sure. More than 100 years ago.’
- **A** did the telephone invent
- **B** has the telephone invented
- **C** was invented the telephone
- **D** was the telephone invented
- **E** the telephone was invented

#### 10.2
‘I broke my finger last week.’ ‘How ................................................ that?’
- **A** did you
- **B** you did
- **C** you did do
- **D** did you do
IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

10.3 Why ................................................me last night? I was waiting for you to phone.
A didn't you phone B you not phone C you don't phone D you didn't phone

10.4 ‘Who ................................................in this house?’ ‘I don't know.’
A lives B does live C lives D living

10.5 What ................................................when you told him the story?
A said Paul B did Paul say C Paul said D did Paul said

10.6 ‘Tom's father is in hospital.’ ‘ .............. ’
A In which hospital he is? B In which hospital he is in?
C Which hospital he is in? D Which hospital is he in?

10.7 Did you have a good holiday?
A How was the weather like? B What was the weather like?
C What the weather was like? D Was the weather like?

10.8 ................................................taller – Joe or Gary?
A Who is B What is C Which is D Who has

10.9 There are four umbrellas here. ................................................... is yours?
A What B Who C Which D How E Which one

10.10 How long ................................................to cross the Atlantic by ship?
A is it B does it need C does it take D does it want

10.11 I don't remember what ................................................at the party.
A Kate was wearing B was wearing Kate C was Kate wearing

10.12 ‘Do you know ................................................?’ ‘Yes, I think so.’
A if Jack is at home B is Jack at home C whether Jack is at home
D that Jack is at home

Reported speech

11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said that ................................................me, but he didn't.
A he phone B he phones C he'll phone D he's going to phone
E he would phone

11.2 ‘Why did Tim go to bed so early?’ ‘He .................................................’
A said he was tired B said that he was tired C said me he was tired
D told me he was tired E told that he was tired

-ing and to

12.1 You shouldn't ................................................so hard.
A working B work C to work D worked

12.2 It's late. I ................................................now.
A must to go B have go C have to going D have to go

12.3 Tina has decided ................................................her car.
A sell B to sell C selling D to selling

12.4 I don't mind ................................................early.
A get up B to get up C getting up D to getting up
### Study guide

**IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12.5</th>
<th>Do you like _______ early?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>get up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>to get up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>getting up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>to getting up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12.6</th>
<th>Do you want _______ you some money?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>me lend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>me lending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>me to lend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>that I lend</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12.7</th>
<th>He's very funny. He makes _______</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>me laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>me laughing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>me to laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>that I laugh</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>12.8</th>
<th>Paula went to the shop _______ a newspaper.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>for get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>for to get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>for getting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>to get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>get</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Go, get, do, make and have**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13.1</th>
<th>It's a nice day. Let's go _______</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>for a swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>on a swim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>to swimming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>swimming</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13.2</th>
<th>I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she _______ better soon.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>makes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>gets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>goes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13.3</th>
<th>Kate _______ the car and drove away.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>went into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>went in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>got in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>got into</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13.4</th>
<th>'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll _______ it.'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>open</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13.5</th>
<th>I'm sorry, I _______ a mistake.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13.6</th>
<th>' _______ a good time in Tokyo?' 'Yes, it was great.'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Had you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Do you have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Did you have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pronouns and possessives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14.1</th>
<th>I don't want this book. You can have _______</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14.2</th>
<th>Sue and Kevin are going to the cinema. Do you want to go with _______?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>him</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14.3</th>
<th>I know Amy, but I don't know _______ husband.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14.4</th>
<th>Oxford is famous for _______ university.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>it's</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14.5</th>
<th>I didn't have an umbrella, so Sarah gave me _______</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>her</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>her umbrella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>she's</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14.6</th>
<th>I went out to meet a friend of _______</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>mine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>my</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>myself</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14.7</th>
<th>We had a good holiday. We enjoyed _______</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>ourself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14.8</th>
<th>Kate and Helen are good friends. They know _______ well.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>theirselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16.1 ‘I’m going on holiday next week.’ ‘Oh, __________ nice.’
A it’s  B this is  C that’s

16.2 ‘Is there a bank near here?’ ‘Yes, there’s __________ at the end of this street.’
A some  B it  C one  D a one

16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have __________?
A clean one  B a clean one  C clean  D a clean

16.4 I’m going shopping. I’m going to buy __________ clothes.
A any  B some

16.5 ‘Where’s your luggage?’ ‘I don’t have __________.’
A one  B some  C any

16.6 Tracey and Jack __________.
A have no children  B don’t have no children  
C don’t have any children  D have any children

16.7 ‘How much money do you have?’ __________

16.8 There is __________ in the room. It’s empty.
A anybody  B nobody  C anyone  D no-one

16.9 ‘What did you say?’ __________

16.10 I’m hungry. I want __________.
A something for eat  B something to eat  C something for eating

16.11 Ben watches TV for about two hours __________
A all evening  B all evenings  C all the evenings  D every evenings
E every evening

16.12 __________ friends.
A Everybody need  B Everybody needs  C Everyone need  D Everyone needs

16.13 __________ children like playing.
A Most  B The most  C Most of  D The most of

16.14 I like __________ those pictures.
A both  B both of  C either  D either of

16.15 I haven’t read __________ these books.
A neither  B neither of  C either  D either of

16.16 Do you have __________ friends?
A a lot of  B much  C many  D much of  E many of

16.17 We like films, so we go to the cinema __________.
A a lot of  B much  C many  D a lot

16.18 There were __________ people in the theatre. It was nearly empty.
A a little  B few  C little  D a few of

16.19 They have __________ money, so they’re not poor.
A a little  B a few  C few  D little  E little of
### Adjectives and adverbs

17.1 I don't speak any ____________________________.
   A foreign languages  B languages foreign  C languages foreigners

17.2 He ate his dinner very ________________________.
   A quick    B quicker    C quickly

17.3 You speak English very ________________________.
   A good    B fluent    C well    D slow

17.4 Helen wants ________________________________.
   A a more big car  B a car more big  C a car bigger  D a bigger car

17.5 'Do you feel better today?' 'No, I feel ________________________.'
   A good    B worse    C more bad    D more worse

17.6 Athens is older ________________________________ Rome.
   A as    B than    C that    D of

17.7 I can run faster ________________________________
   A than him    B that he can    C than he can    D as he can    E as he

17.8 Tennis isn't ________________________________ football.
   A popular as    B popular than    C as popular than    D so popular that
   E as popular as

17.9 The weather today is the same ________________________ yesterday.
   A as    B that    C than    D like

17.10 The Europa Hotel is ________________________________ in the city.
   A the more expensive hotel  B the most expensive hotel
   C the hotel most expensive  D the hotel the more expensive
   E the hotel more expensive

17.11 The film was very bad. I think it's the ________________________ film I've ever seen.
   A worse    B baddest    C most bad    D worst    E more worse

17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You've got ________________________.
   A enough money    B money enough    C enough of money

17.13 Is your English ________________________________ a conversation?
   A enough good to have    B good enough for have    C enough good for
   D good enough to have

17.14 I'm ________________________________ out.
   A too tired for go    B too much tired for going    C too tired to go
   D too much tired to go

### Word order

18.1 Sue ________________________________ . They're very nice.
   A bought yesterday some new shoes    B bought some new shoes yesterday
   C yesterday bought some new shoes

18.2 ________________________________ coffee in the morning.
   A I drink always    B Always I drink    C I always drink
18.3 during the day.  
A They are at home never  
B They are never at home  
C They never are at home  
D Never they are at home

18.4 ‘Where’s Emma?’ ‘She ___________________.’  
A isn’t here yet  
B isn’t here already  
C isn’t here still

18.5 I locked the door and I gave ___________________.  
A Sarah the keys  
B to Sarah the keys  
C the keys Sarah  
D the keys to Sarah

Conjunctions and clauses

19.1 I can’t talk to you now. I’ll talk to you later when ___________________. more time.  
A I’ll have  
B I had  
C I have  
D I’m going to have

19.2 ___________________. late this evening, don’t wait for me.  
A If I’m  
B if I’ll be  
C When I’m  
D When I’ll be

19.3 I don’t know the answer. If I ___________________. the answer, I’d tell you.  
A know  
B would know  
C have known  
D knew

19.4 I like this jacket. ___________________. it if it wasn’t so expensive.  
A I buy  
B I’ll buy  
C I bought  
D I’d bought  
E I’d buy

19.5 Emma lives in a house ___________________. is 400 years old.  
A who  
B that  
C which  
D it  
E what

19.6 The people ___________________. work in the office are very friendly.  
A who  
B that  
C they  
D which  
E what

19.7 Did you find the books ___________________.?  
A who you wanted  
B that you wanted  
C what you wanted  
D you wanted  
E you wanted it

19.8 I met ___________________. can speak six languages.  
A a woman who  
B a woman which  
C a woman  
D a woman she

Prepositions

20.1 Bye! I’ll see you  
A until Friday  
B at Friday  
C in Friday  
D on Friday

20.2 Hurry! The train leaves ___________________. five minutes.  
A at  
B on  
C from  
D after  
E in

20.3 ‘How long will you be away?’ ‘ ___________________. Monday.’  
A On  
B To  
C Until  
D Till  
E Since

20.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played ___________________. two hours.  
A in  
B for  
C since  
D during

20.5 I always have breakfast before ___________________. to work.  
A I go  
B go  
C to go  
D going

20.6 Write your name ___________________. the top of the page.  
A at  
B on  
C in  
D to
20.7 There are a lot of apples near those trees.
A at B on C in D to

20.8 What's the largest city in the world?
A at B on C in D of

20.9 The office is on the first floor.
A at B on C in D to

20.10 I met a lot of people at the party.
A on B to C in D at

20.11 I want to go to Italy next year.
A at B on C in D to

20.12 What time did you arrive at the hotel?
A at B on C in D to

20.13 ‘Where is David in this picture?’ ‘He's in front of Laura.’
A at front of B in the front of C in front of
D in front from

20.14 I jumped over the wall into the garden.
A on B through C across D over E above

20.15 Jane isn't at work this week. She's on holiday.
A on B for C at D to E at

20.16 Do you like travelling by train?
A with train B with the train C in train D on train
E by train

20.17 I'm not very good at telling stories.
A with B at C in D to E by

20.18 Tom left without saying goodbye.
A say B saying C to say D that he said

20.19 I have to phone my parents today.
A with my parents B to my parents C at my parents
D my parents

20.20 ‘Do you like eating in restaurants?’ ‘It depends on the restaurant.’
A in B at C of D on E over

Phrasal verbs

21.1 The car stopped and a woman got off the bus.
A off B down C out D out of

21.2 It was cold, so I put on my coat.
A put on my coat B put my coat on C put the coat on me
D put me the coat on

21.3 I've got Rachel's keys. I have to give them back to her.
A give back B give them back C give back them D give it back
UNIT 1

1.1
2 they're
3 it isn't / it's not
4 that's
5 I'm not
6 you aren't / you're not

1.2
2 'm/am 6 are
3 is 7 is... are
4 are 8 'm/am... is
5 's/is

1.3
2 I'm / I am
3 He's / He is
4 they're / they are
5 It's / It is
6 You're / You are
7 She's / She is
8 Here's / Here is

1.4
Example answers:
1 My name is Robert.
2 I'm 25.
3 I'm from Australia.
4 I'm a gardener.
5 My favourite colours are black and white.
6 I'm interested in plants.

1.5
2 They're / They are cold.
3 He's / He is hot.
4 They're / They are scared.
5 They're / They are hungry.
6 She's / She is angry.

1.6
2 It's/It is windy today. or It isn’t/It’s not windy today.
3 My hands are cold. or My hands aren’t/are not cold.
4 Brazil is a very big country.
5 Diamonds aren’t/are not cheap.
6 Toronto isn’t/is not in the US.
7 I'm/I am hungry. or I'm not/I am not hungry.
8 I'm/I am a good swimmer. or I'm not/I am not a good swimmer.
9 I'm/I am interested in football. or I'm not/I am not interested in football.

UNIT 2

2.1
2 F 6 E
3 H 7 B
4 C 8 I
5 A 9 D

2.2
3 Is your job interesting?
4 Are the shops open today?
5 Where are you from?
6 Are you interested in sport?
7 Is the station near here?
8 Are your children at school?
9 Why are you late?

2.3
2 Where's / Where is
3 How old are
4 How much are
5 What's / What is
6 Who's / Who is
7 What colour are

2.4
2 Are you American?
3 How old are you?
4 Are you a teacher?
5 Are you married?
6 Is your wife a lawyer?
7 Where's/Where is she from?
8 What's/What is her name?
9 How old is she?

2.5
2 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.
3 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. / No, it’s not.
4 Yes, they are. or No, they aren't. / No, they're not.
5 Yes, it is. or No, it isn’t. / No, it’s not.
6 Yes, I am. or No, I’m not.

UNIT 3

3.1
2 's/is waiting
3 're/are playing
4 He's/He is lying
5 They're/They are having
6 She's/She is sitting

3.2
2 's/is cooking
3 're/are standing
4 's/is swimming
5 're/are staying
6 's/is having
7 're/are building
8 'm/am going

3.3
3 She's/She is sitting on the floor.
4 She isn't/She's not reading a book.
5 She isn’t/She’s not playing the piano.
6 She's/She is laughing.
7 She's/She is wearing a hat.
8 She isn’t/She’s not drinking coffee.

3.4
3 I’m sitting on a chair. or I’m not sitting on a chair.
4 I’m eating. or I’m not eating.
5 It’s raining. or It isn’t raining. / It’s not raining.
6 I’m learning English.
7 I’m listening to music. or I’m not listening to music.
8 The sun is shining. or The sun isn’t shining.
9 I’m wearing shoes. or I’m not wearing shoes.
10 I’m not reading a newspaper.

UNIT 4

4.1
2 Are you going now?
3 Is it raining?
4 Are you enjoying the film?
5 Is that clock working?
6 Are you waiting for a bus?

4.2
2 Where is she going?
3 What are you eating?
4 Why are you crying?
5 What are they looking at?
6 Why is he laughing?

4.3
3 Are you listening to me?
4 Where are your friends going?
5 Are your parents watching TV?
6 What is Jessica cooking?
7 Why are you looking at me?
8 Is the bus coming?
4.4
2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
3 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
4 Yes, it is. or No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.
6 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

UNIT 5

5.1
2 thinks 5 has
3 flies 6 finishes
4 dances

5.2
2 live 5 They go
3 She eats 6 He sleeps
4 He plays

5.3
2 open 7 costs
3 closes 8 cost
4 teaches 9 boils
5 meet 10 like ... likes
6 washes

5.4
2 I never go to the cinema.
3 Martina always works hard.
4 Children usually like chocolate.
5 Jackie always enjoys parties.
6 I often forget people's names.
7 Sam never watches TV.
8 We usually have dinner at 7.30.
9 Kate always wears nice clothes.

5.5
Example answers:
2 I sometimes read in bed.
3 I often get up before 7 o'clock.
4 I never go to work by bus.
5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.

UNIT 6

6.1
2 Anna doesn't play the piano very well.
3 They don't know my phone number.
4 We don't work very hard.
5 He doesn't have a bath every day.
6 You don't do the same thing every day.

6.2
2 Kate doesn't like classical music.
I like (or I don't like) classical music.
3 Ben and Sophie don't like boxing.
Kate likes boxing.
I like (or I don't like) boxing.
4 Ben and Sophie like horror movies.
Kate doesn't like horror movies.
I like (or I don't like) horror movies.

6.3
Example answers:
2 I never go to the theatre.
3 I don't ride a bike very often.
4 I never eat in restaurants.
5 I often travel by train.

6.4
2 doesn't use
3 don't go
4 doesn't wear
5 don't know
6 doesn't cost
7 don't see

6.5
3 don't know
4 doesn't talk
5 drinks
6 don't believe
7 like
8 doesn't eat

UNIT 7

7.1
2 Do you play tennis?
3 Does Lucy live near here?
4 Do Tom's friends play tennis? / Do his friends play tennis? / Do they play tennis?
5 Does your brother speak English? / Does he speak English?
6 Do you do yoga every morning?
7 Does Paul go away a lot? / Does he go away a lot? or Does Paul go away much? / Does he go away much?
8 Do you want to be famous?
9 Does Anna work hard? / Does she work hard?

7.2
3 How often do you watch TV?
4 What do you want for dinner?
5 Do you like football?
6 Does your brother like football?
7 What do you do in your free time?
8 Where does your sister work?
9 Do you always have breakfast?
10 What does this word mean?
11 Does it snow here in winter?
12 What time do you usually go to bed?
13 How much does it cost to phone New York?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?

7.3
2 Do you enjoy / Do you like
3 do you start
4 Do you work
5 do you go
6 does he do
7 does he teach
8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

7.4
2 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
3 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.
4 Yes, it does. or No, it doesn't.
5 Yes, I do. or No, I don't.

UNIT 8

8.1
2 No, she isn't.
Yes, she does.
She's playing the piano.
3 Yes, he does.
Yes, he is.
He's cleaning a window.
4 No, they aren't.
Yes, they do.
They teach.

8.2
2 don't 6 do
3 are 7 does
4 does 8 doesn't
5 's/is ... don't
8.3
4 is singing
5 She wants
6 do you use
7 you're sitting
8 I don't understand
9 I'm going ... Are you coming
10 does your father finish
11 I'm not listening
12 He's/He is cooking
13 doesn't usually drive ... usually walks
14 doesn't like ... She prefers

UNIT 9
9.1
3 He's got a new job.
4 Have you got an umbrella?
5 We've got a lot of work to do.
6 I haven't got your phone number.
7 Has your father got a car?
8 How much money have we got?

9.2
2 I don't have many clothes.
3 Does Tom have a brother?
4 How many children do they have?
5 Do you have any questions?
6 Sam doesn't have a job.

9.3
2 He's got a bike. or He has a bike.
3 He hasn't got a dog. or He doesn't have a dog.
4 He's got a mobile phone. or He has a mobile phone.
5 He hasn't got a watch. or He doesn't have a watch.
6 He's got two brothers and a sister. or He has two brothers and a sister.
7 I've got a dog. / I have a dog.
or I haven't got a dog. / I don't have a dog.
8 I've got a bike. / I have a bike.
or I haven't got a bike. / I don't have a bike.
9 (Example answer) I've got a brother and a sister. or I have a brother and a sister.

9.4
3 has 6 don't have
4 don't have 7 doesn't
5 have

9.5
2 's got / has got a lot of friends
3 hasn't got a key
4 haven't got much time
5 has got six legs
6 haven't got a job

UNIT 10
10.1
2 Jack and Kate were at/in the cinema.
3 Sue was at the station.
4 Mr and Mrs Hall were in/at a restaurant.
5 Ben was on the beach / on a beach / at the beach / at the seaside.
6 (Example answer) I was at work.

10.2
2 is ... was 6 're/are
3 'm/am 7 Was
4 was 8 was
5 were 9 are ... were

10.3
2 wasn't ... was
3 was ... were
4 'Were Kate and Ben at the party? 'Kate was there, but Ben wasn't.' or 'Kate wasn't there, but Ben was.'
5 were
6 weren't ... were

10.4
2 Was your exam difficult?
3 Where were Sue and Chris last week?
4 How much was your new camera?
5 Why were you angry yesterday?
6 Was the weather nice last week?

UNIT 11
11.1
2 opened
3 started ... finished
4 wanted
5 happened
6 rained
7 enjoyed ... stayed
8 died

11.2
2 saw 8 thought
3 played 9 copied
4 paid 10 knew
5 visited 11 put
6 bought 12 spoke
7 went

11.3
2 got 9 checked
3 had 10 had
4 left 11 waited
5 drove 12 departed
6 got 13 arrived
7 parked 14 took
8 walked

11.4
2 lost her keys
3 met her friends
4 bought a newspaper
5 went to the cinema
6 ate an orange
7 had a shower
8 came (to see us)

11.5
2-6 Example answers
I got up late yesterday.
I met some friends at lunchtime.
I went to the supermarket.
I phoned a lot of people.
I lost my keys.

UNIT 12
12.1
2 didn't work
3 didn't go
4 didn't have
5 didn't do

12.2
2 Did you enjoy the party?
3 Did you have a good holiday?
4 Did you finish work early?
5 Did you sleep well last night?
### Key to Exercises

#### 12.3
2 I got up before 7 o'clock, or I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.
3 I had a shower, or I didn't have a shower.
4 I bought a magazine, or I didn't buy a magazine.
5 I ate meat, or I didn't eat meat.
6 I went to bed before 10.30, or I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

#### 12.4
2 did you arrive
3 Did you win
4 did you go
5 did it cost
6 Did you go to bed late
7 Did you have a nice time
8 did it happen / did that happen

#### 12.5
2 bought 6 didn't have
3 Did it rain 7 did you do
4 didn't stay 8 didn't know

#### UNIT 13

#### 13.1
2 Jack and Kate were at the cinema. They were watching a film.
3 Tom was in his car. He was driving.
4 Tracey was at the station. She was waiting for a train.
5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the park. They were walking.
6 *(Example answer)* I was in a cafe. I was having a drink with some friends.

#### 13.2
2 she was playing tennis
3 she was reading a/the paper/newspaper
4 she was cooking (lunch)
5 she was having breakfast
6 she was cleaning the kitchen

#### 13.3
2 What were you doing
3 Was it raining
4 Why was Sue driving
5 Was Tom wearing

#### UNIT 14

#### 14.1
1 happened ... was painting ... fell 
2 arrived ... got ... were waiting 
3 was walking ... met ... was going ... was carrying ... stopped 

#### 14.2
2 was studying 
3 Did Paul call ... called ... was having 
4 didn't go 
5 were you driving ... stopped ... wasn't driving 
6 Did your team win ... didn't play 
7 did you break ... were playing ... kicked ... hit 
8 Did you see ... was wearing 
9 were you doing 
10 lost ... did you get ... climbed

#### UNIT 15

#### 15.1
2 She has/She's closed the door. 
3 They have/They've gone to bed. 
4 It has/It's stopped raining. 
5 He has/He's had a shower. 
6 The picture has fallen down.

#### 15.2
2 've bought / have bought 
3 's gone / has gone 
4 Have you seen 
5 has broken 
6 've told / have told 
7 has taken 
8 haven't seen 
9 has she gone 
10 've forgotten / have forgotten 
11 's invited / has invited 
12 Have you decided 
13 haven't told 
14 've finished / have finished

#### UNIT 16

#### 16.1
2 He's/He has just got up. 
3 They've/They have just bought a car. 
4 The race has just started. 

#### 16.2
2 they've/they have already seen it. 
3 I've/I have already phoned him. 
4 He's/He has already gone (away). 
5 I've/I have already read it. 
6 She's/She has already started (it). 

#### 16.3
2 The bus has just gone. 
3 The train hasn't left yet. 
4 He hasn't opened it yet. 
5 They've/They have just finished their dinner. 
6 It's / It has just stopped raining.

#### 16.4
2 Have you met your new neighbours yet? 
3 Have you paid your electricity bill yet? 
4 Has Tom/he sold his car yet?

#### UNIT 17

#### 17.1
3 Have you ever been to Australia? 
4 Have you ever lost your passport? 
5 Have you ever flown in a helicopter? 
6 Have you ever won a race? 
7 Have you ever been to New York? 
8 Have you ever driven a bus? 
9 Have you ever broken your leg?
17.2
Helen:
2 She’s/She has been to Australia once.
3 She’s/She has never won a race.
4 She’s/She has flown in a helicopter a few times.
You (example answers):
5 I’ve/I have never been to New York.
6 I’ve/I have played tennis many times.
7 I’ve/I have never driven a lorry.
8 I’ve/I have been late for work a few times.

17.3
2–6
She’s/She has done a lot of interesting things.
She’s/She has travelled all over the world, or She’s/She has been all over the world.
She’s/She has been married three times.
She’s/She has written ten books.
She’s/She has met a lot of interesting people.

17.4
2 been 6 gone
3 gone 7 gone
4 been 8 been

UNIT 18
18.1
3 have been
4 has been
5 have lived / have been living
6 has worked / has been working
7 has had
8 have been learning

18.2
2 How long have they been there? or … been in Brazil?
3 How long have you known her? or … known Amy?
4 How long has she been learning Italian?
5 How long has he lived in Canada? / How long has he been living … ?
6 How long have you been a teacher?
7 How long has it been raining?

18.3
2 She has lived in Wales all her life.
3 They have been on holiday since Sunday.
4 The sun has been shining all day.
5 She has been waiting for ten minutes.
6 He has had a beard since he was 20.

18.4
2 I know
3 I’ve known
4 have you been waiting
5 works
6 She has been reading
7 have you lived
8 I’ve had
9 is … He has been

UNIT 19
19.1
3 for 6 for
4 since 7 for
5 since 8 for … since

19.2
Example answers:
2 A year ago.
3 A few weeks ago.
4 Two hours ago.
5 Six months ago.

19.3
3 for 20 years
4 20 years ago
5 an hour ago
6 a few days ago
7 for six months
8 for a long time

19.4
2 Jack has been here since Tuesday.
3 It’s been raining for an hour.
4 I’ve known Sue since 2008.
5 Claire and Matt have been married for six months.
6 Laura has been studying medicine (at university) for three years.
7 David has played / David has been playing the piano since he was seven years old.

19.5
Example answers
2 I’ve been in the same job for ten years.
3 I’ve been learning English for six months.
4 I’ve known Chris for a long time.
5 I’ve had a headache since I got up this morning.

UNIT 20
20.1
2 I started (it)
3 they arrived
4 she went (away)
5 I wore it

20.2
3 I finished
4 OK
5 did you finish
6 OK
7 (Steve’s grandmother) died
8 Where were you / Where did you go

20.3
3 played
4 did you go
5 Have you ever met
6 wasn’t
7 ’s/has visited
8 switched
9 lived
10 haven’t been

20.4
1 Did you have … was
2 Have you seen … went … haven’t seen
3 has worked / has been working … was … worked … didn’t enjoy
4 ’ve/have seen … ’ve/have never spoken … Have you ever spoken … met
**UNIT 21**

### 21.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Glass is made from sand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>The windows are cleaned every two weeks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>This room isn’t used very much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Are we allowed to park here?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>How is this word pronounced?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>The house was painted last month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>My phone was stolen a few days ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Three people were injured in the accident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>When was this bridge built?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>I wasn’t woken up by the noise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>How were these windows broken?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Were you invited to Jon’s party last week?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 21.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Football is played in most ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Why was the letter sent to ...?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>... where films are made.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Where were you born?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>How many languages are spoken ...?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>... but nothing was stolen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>When was the bicycle invented?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 21.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>is made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>were damaged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>was given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>are shown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>were invited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>was made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>was stolen ... was found</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 21.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Sarah was born in Manchester.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Her parents were born in Ireland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>I was born in ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>My mother was born in ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**UNIT 22**

### 22.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A bridge is being built.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>The windows are being cleaned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>The grass is being cut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>The houses are being knocked down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The trees have been cut down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>They have been invited to a party.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 22.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>The window has been broken.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>The roof is being repaired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>The car has been damaged.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>The houses are being knocked down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The trees have been cut down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>They have been invited to a party.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 22.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>has been repaired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>was repaired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>are made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>were they built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Is the photocopier being used or is anybody using the photocopier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>are they called</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>were stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>was damaged ... hasn’t been repaired</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**UNIT 23**

### 23.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Does</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>does</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 23.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>don’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>‘m/am not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>isn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>don’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>doesn’t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>‘m/am not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>aren’t / ‘re not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 23.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 23.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>‘ve/have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>was</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>has</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**UNIT 24**

### 24.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>brought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>enjoyed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>bought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>happened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>caught</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>watched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>understood</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 24.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>began</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>drank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>drove</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>spoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>wrote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>came</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>knew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>took</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>gave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>threw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>forgot</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 24.3

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Exercise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>saw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>rained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>lost ... seen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>stolen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>went</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>finished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>built</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>learnt/learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>fell ... hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>ran ... run</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Key to Exercises

| 24.4 | 8 spoken
| 2 told | 9 cost
| 3 won | 10 driven
| 4 met | 11 sold
| 5 woken up | 12 flew
| 6 swam | 7 thought

### UNIT 25

#### 25.1
1. Richard is going to the cinema.
2. Rachel is meeting Dave.
3. Karen is having lunch with Will.
4. Sue and Tom are going to a party.

#### 25.2
1. Are you working next week?
2. What are you doing tomorrow evening?
3. What time are your friends coming?
4. When is Lisa going on holiday?

#### 25.3
1. Example answers
2. I'm going away at the weekend.
3. I'm playing basketball tomorrow.
4. I'm meeting a friend this evening.
5. I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.

#### 25.4
3. She's getting
4. are going ... are they going
5. finishes
6. I'm not going
7. I'm going ... We're meeting
8. are you getting ... leaves
9. Are you coming ... does the film begin
10. are you doing ... I'm working

### UNIT 26

#### 26.1
1. I'm going to have a bath.
2. I'm going to buy a car.
3. We're going to play football.

#### 26.2
1. 'm/am going to walk
2. 'm/am going to eat
3. 're/are going to give
4. 'm/am going to lie down

### UNIT 27

#### 27.1
2. she'll be 5 she's
3. she was 6 she was
4. she'll be 7 she'll be

#### 27.2
1. I'll be at home.
2. I'll probably be in bed.
3. I'll be at work.
4. I don't know where I'll be.

#### 27.3
2. 'll/will 5 'll/will
3. won't 6 'll/will
4. won't 7 won't

#### 27.4
1. I think we'll win the game.
2. I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.
3. I think Sue will like her present.
4. I don't think they'll get married.
5. I don't think you'll enjoy the film.

### UNIT 28

#### 28.1
2. I'll eat 5 I'll stay
3. I'll sit 6 I'll show
4. I'll do

#### 28.2
1. I think I'll have
2. I don't think I'll play
3. I think I'll buy
4. I don't think I'll buy

#### 28.3
1. I'll do
2. I watch
3. I'll go
4. I'll give
5. are you getting ... leaves
6. I'm working

#### 28.4
1. Shall I turn off the TV?
2. Shall I make some sandwiches?
3. Shall I turn on the light?

### UNIT 29

#### 29.1
2. I might see you tomorrow.
3. Sarah might forget to phone.
4. It might snow today.
5. I might be late tonight.
6. Mark might not be here next week.
7. I might not have time to go out.

#### 29.2
1. I might go away.
2. I might see her on Monday.
3. I might have fish.
4. I might get/take a taxi. or ... go by taxi.
5. I might buy/get a new car.
Key to Exercises

29.3
3 He might get up early.
4 He isn’t/He’s not working tomorrow.
5 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
6 He might watch TV.
7 He’s going out in the afternoon.
8 He might go shopping.

29.4
1–3 Example answers
I might buy some new clothes.
I might go out with some friends.
I might have an egg for breakfast.

UNIT 30

30.1
2 Can you ski?
3 Can you play chess?
4 Can you run ten kilometres?
5 Can you drive (a car)?
6 Can you ride (a horse)?
7 I can/can’t swim.
8 I can/can’t ski.
9 I can/can’t play chess.
10 I can/can’t run ten kilometres.
11 I can/can’t drive (a car).
12 I can/can’t ride (a horse).

30.2
2 can see
3 can’t hear
4 can’t find
5 can speak

30.3
2 couldn’t eat
3 can’t decide
4 couldn’t find
5 can’t go
6 couldn’t go

30.4
2 Can/Could you pass the salt (please)?
3 Can/Could I have these postcards (please)?
4 Can/Could you turn off the radio (please)?
5 Can/Could I borrow your newspaper (please)?
6 Can/Could I use your pen (please)?

UNIT 31

31.1
2 must meet 5 must go
3 must wash 6 must win
4 must learn 7 must be

31.2
2 I must 5 I had to
3 I had to 6 I had to
4 I must 7 I must

31.3
2 don’t need to rush
3 mustn’t lose
4 don’t need to wait
5 mustn’t forget
6 don’t need to phone

31.4
2 C 4 B
3 A 5 D

UNIT 32

32.1
2 You should go
3 You should eat
4 you should visit
5 you should wear
6 You should take

32.2
2 He shouldn’t eat so much.
3 She shouldn’t work so hard.
4 He shouldn’t drive so fast.

32.3
2 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
3 Do you think I should get another job?
4 Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?

32.4
3 I think you should sell it.
4 I think she should have a holiday.
5 I don’t think they should get married.

6 I don’t think you should go to work.
7 I think he should go to the doctor.
8 I don’t think we should stay there.

32.5
Example answers:
2 I think everybody should have enough food.
3 I think people should drive more carefully.
4 I don’t think the police should carry guns.
5 I think I should take more exercise.

UNIT 33

33.1
2 have to do
3 has to read
4 have to speak
5 has to travel
6 have to hit

33.2
2 have to go
3 had to buy
4 have to change
5 had to answer

33.3
2 did he have to wait
3 does she have to go
4 did you have to pay
5 do you have to do

33.4
2 doesn’t have to wait.
3 didn’t have to get up early.
4 doesn’t have to work (so) hard.
5 don’t have to leave now.

33.5
3 have to pay
4 had to borrow
5 must stop or have to stop (both are correct)
6 has to meet
7 must tell or have to tell (both are correct)

33.6
Example answers:
2 I have to go to work every day.
3 I had to go to the dentist yesterday.
4 I have to go shopping tomorrow.
UNIT 34

34.1
2 Would you like an apple?
3 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
4 Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?
5 Would you like a sandwich?
6 Would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?

34.2
2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
3 Would you like to come to a concert next week?
4 Would you like to borrow my umbrella?

34.3
2 Do you like
3 Would you like
4 would you like
5 Would you like
6 I like
7 would you like
8 Would you like
9 Do you like
10 I'd like
11 I'd like
12 do you like

UNIT 35

35.1
3 Don't buy
4 Smile
5 Don't sit
6 Have
7 Don't forget
8 Sleep
9 Be ... Don't drop

35.2
2 let's take a taxi
3 let's watch TV
4 let's go to a restaurant
5 let's wait a little

35.3
3 No, let's not go out.
4 No, don't close the window.
5 No, don't phone me (tonight).
6 No, let's not wait for Andy.
7 No, don't turn on the light.
8 No, let's not go by bus.

UNIT 36

36.1
2 He used to play football.
3 She used to be a taxi driver.
4 They used to live in the country.
5 He used to wear glasses.
6 This building used to be a hotel.

36.2
2–6
She used to play volleyball.
She used to go out most evenings. / She used to go out a lot.
She used to play the guitar.
She used to read a lot. / She used to like reading.
She used to go away two or three times a year. / She used to travel a lot.

36.3
3 used to have
4 used to be
5 go / travel
6 used to eat
7 watches
8 used to live
9 get
10 did you use to play

UNIT 37

37.1
3 There's/There is a hospital.
4 There isn't a swimming pool.
5 There are two cinemas.
6 There isn't a university.
7 There aren't any big hotels.

37.2
3–6 Example answers
There is a university in ...
There are a lot of big shops.
There isn't an airport.
There aren't many factories.

37.3
2 There's/There is
3 is there
4 There are
5 are there
6 There isn't
7 Is there
8 Are there
9 There's / There is ...
10 There aren't

UNIT 38

38.1
2 There was a carpet
3 There were three pictures
4 There was a small table
5 There were some flowers
6 There were some books
7 There was an armchair
8 There was a sofa

38.2
3 There was
4 Was there
5 there weren't
6 There wasn't
7 Were there
8 There wasn't
9 There was
10 there weren't

38.3
2 There are
3 There was
4 There's/There is
5 There's been/There has been or There was
6 there was
7 there will be
8 there were ... there are
9 There have been
10 there will be or there are
Key to Exercises

UNIT 39

39.1
2 It's cold.
3 It's windy.
4 It's sunny/fine. or It's a nice day.
5 It's snowing.
6 It's cloudy.

39.2
2 It's / It is
3 Is it
4 It's ... it's / it is
5 It's / It is
6 Is it
7 It is
8 It's / It is
9 It's / It is

39.3
2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
4 How far is it from your house to the airport?

39.4
2 It
3 It
4 It ... It
5 There
6 It

39.5
2 It's nice to see you again.
3 It's impossible to work here.
4 It's easy to make friends.
5 It's interesting to visit different places.
6 It's dangerous to go out alone

UNIT 40

40.1
2 is
3 can
4 has

40.2
2 I'm not
3 weren't
4 haven't

40.3
3 doesn't
4 do
5 did

40.4
Example answers:
2 I like sport, but my sister doesn’t.

UNIT 41

41.1
2 Do you?
3 Didn't you?
4 Doesn't she?
5 Do I?
6 Did she?

41.2
3 Have you?
4 Can't she?
5 Were you?
6 Didn't you?
7 Is there?
8 Was there?
9 Haven't you?

41.3
2 aren't they
3 wasn't she
4 haven't you

41.4
2 are you
3 isn't she
4 can't you
5 do you

UNIT 42

42.1
2 either
3 too
4 too

42.2
2 So am I.
3 So have I.
4 So do I.
5 So will I.
6 So was I.
7 Neither can I.
8 Neither did I.
9 Neither have I.
10 Neither am I.
11 Neither do I.

UNIT 43

43.1
2 They aren't / They’re not married.
3 I haven't had dinner.
4 It isn’t cold today.
5 We won’t be late.
6 You shouldn’t go.

43.2
2 I don't like cheese.
3 They didn't understand.
4 He doesn’t live here.
5 Don’t go away!
6 I didn’t do the shopping.

43.3
2 They haven't arrived.
3 I didn't go to the bank.
4 He doesn't speak German.
5 We weren’t angry.
6 He won’t be pleased.
7 Don't call me tonight.
8 It didn’t rain yesterday.
9 I couldn't hear them.
10 I don't believe you.

43.4
2 I’m not / am not
3 can’t
4 doesn’t
5 isn’t / ’s not
6 don’t... haven’t
7 Don’t
8 didn’t
9 haven’t
10 won’t
11 didn’t
12 weren’t
13 hasn’t
14 shouldn’t / mustn’t

43.5
3 He wasn’t born in London.
4 He doesn’t like London.
5 He’d like to live in the country.
6 He can drive.
7 He hasn’t got a car. or He doesn’t have a car.
8 He doesn’t read newspapers.
9 He isn’t interested in politics.
10 He watches TV most evenings.
11 He didn’t watch TV last night.
12 He went out last night.

UNIT 44

44.1
3 Were you late this morning?
4 Has Kate got a key? or Does Kate have a key?
5 Will you be here tomorrow?
6 Is Paul going out this evening?
7 Do you like your job?
8 Does Nicola live near here?
9 Did you enjoy the film?
10 Did you have a good holiday?

44.2
2 Do you use it a lot?
3 Did you use it yesterday?
4 Do you enjoy driving?
5 Are you a good driver?
6 Have you ever had an accident?

44.3
3 What are the children doing?
4 How is cheese made?
5 Is your sister coming to the party?
6 Why don’t you tell the truth?
7 Have your guests arrived yet?
8 What time does your train leave?
9 Why didn’t Emily go to work?
10 Was your car damaged in the accident?

44.4
3 What are you reading?
4 What time did she go (to bed)?
5 When are they going (on holiday)?
6 Where did you see him?
7 Why can’t you come (to the party)?
8 Where has she gone?
9 How much (money) do you need?
10 Why doesn’t she like you?
11 How often does it rain?
12 When did you do it? / ... the shopping?

UNIT 45

45.1
2 What fell off the shelf?
3 Who wants to see me?
4 Who took your umbrella? / Who took it?
5 What made you ill?
6 Who is / Who’s coming?

45.2
3 Who did you phone?
4 What happened last night?
5 Who knows the answer?
6 Who did the washing-up?
7 What did Jane do? / What did she do?
8 What woke you up?
9 Who saw the accident?
10 Who did you see?
11 Who has got your pen? / Who’s got your pen? / Who has your pen?
12 What does this word mean? / What does it mean?

UNIT 46

46.1
2 What are you looking for?
3 Who did you go to the cinema with?
4 What/Who was the film about?
5 Who did you give the money to?
6 Who was the book written by?

46.2
2 What are they looking at?
3 Which restaurant is he going to?
4 What are they talking about?
5 What is she listening to?
6 Which bus are they waiting for?

46.3
2 Which hotel did you stay at?
3 Which (football) team does he play for?
4 Which school did you go to?

46.4
2 What is the food like?
3 What are the people like?
4 What is the weather like?

46.5
2 What was the film like?
3 What were the lessons like?
4 What was the hotel like?

UNIT 47

47.1
3 What colour is it?
4 What time did you get up?
5 What type of music do you like?
6 What kind of car do you want (to buy)?

47.2
2 Which coat
3 Which film/movie
4 Which bus

47.3
3 Which 8 Who
4 What 9 What
5 Which 10 Which
6 What 11 What
7 Which
Key to Exercises

47.4
2 How far 5 How deep
3 How old 6 How long
4 How often

47.5
2 How heavy is this box?
3 How old are you?
4 How much did you spend?
5 How often do you watch TV?
6 How far is it from Paris to Moscow?

UNIT 48

48.1
2 How long does it take by car from Milan to Rome?
3 How long does it take by train from Paris to Geneva?
4 How long does it take by bus from the city centre to the airport?

48.2
2 It takes ... hours to fly from ... to New York.
3 It takes ... years to study to be a doctor in ...
4 It takes ... to walk from my home to the nearest shop.
5 It takes ... to get from my home to the nearest airport.

48.3
2 How long did it take you to walk to the station?
3 How long did it take him to paint the bathroom?
4 How long did it take you to learn to ski?
5 How long did it take them to repair the car?

48.4
2 It took us 20 minutes to walk home. / ... to get home.
3 It took me six months to learn to drive.
4 It took Mark/him three hours to drive to London. / ... to get to London.
5 It took Lisa/her a long time to find a job. / ... to get a job.
6 It took me ... to ...

UNIT 49

49.1
2 I don’t know where she is.
3 I don’t know how old it is.
4 I don’t know when he’ll be here.
5 I don’t know why he was angry.
6 I don’t know how long she has lived here.

49.2
2 where Susan works
3 what Peter said
4 why he went home early
5 what time the meeting begins
6 how the accident happened

49.3
2 are you
3 they are
4 the museum is
5 do you want
6 elephants eat
7 it is

49.4
2 Do you know if/whether they are married?
3 Do you know if/whether Sue knows Bill?
4 Do you know if/whether Gary will be here tomorrow?
5 Do you know if/whether he passed his exam?

49.5
2 Do you know where Paula is?
3 Do you know if/whether she is working today? / ... she’s working today?
4 Do you know what time she starts work?
5 Do you know if/whether the shops are open tomorrow?
6 Do you know where Sarah and Jack live?
7 Do you know if/whether they went to Jane’s party?

49.6
Example answers:
2 Do you know what time the bus leaves?
3 Excuse me, can you tell me where the station is?
4 I don’t know what I’m going to do this evening.

UNIT 50

50.1
2 She said (that) she was very busy.
3 She said (that) she couldn’t go to the party.
4 He said (that) he had to go out.
5 He said (that) he was learning Russian.
6 She said (that) she didn’t feel very well.
7 They said (that) they would be home late. / ... they’d be ...
8 She said (that) she had just come back from holiday. / ... she’d just come back ...
9 She said (that) she was going to buy a guitar.
10 They said (that) they hadn’t got a key. / They said (that) they didn’t have a key.

50.2
2 She said (that) she wasn’t hungry.
3 he said (that) he needed it.
4 she said (that) she didn’t want to go.
5 She said (that) I could have it.
6 He said (that) he would send me a postcard. / ... he’d send ...
7 Nicola said (that) he had gone home. / ... he’d gone home.
8 He said (that) he wanted to watch TV.
9 She said (that) she was going to the cinema.

50.3
3 said 7 said
4 told 8 told
5 tell 9 tell
6 say 10 say

UNIT 51

51.1
3 phone
4 phone Paul
Key to Exercises

UNIT 52

52.1
3 to see
4 to swim
5 cleaning
6 to ask
7 visiting
8 going
9 to be
10 waiting
11 to do
12 to speak
13 to go
14 crying / to cry
15 to work ... talking

52.2
2 to help
3 to see
4 reading
5 to lose
6 to send
7 raining
8 to go
9 watching / to watch
10 to wait

UNIT 52

52.3
2 going to museums
3 to go
4 driving / to drive
5 to go (there)
6 travelling by train
7 walking

52.4
Example answers:
1 I enjoy cooking.
2 I don't like studying.
3 If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like to go to the beach.
4 When I'm on holiday, I like to do very little.
5 I don't mind travelling alone, but I prefer to travel with somebody.
6 I wouldn't like to live in a big city.

UNIT 53

53.1
2 I want you to listen carefully.
3 I don't want you to be angry.
4 Do you want me to wait for you?
5 I don't want you to call me tonight.
6 I want you to meet Sarah.

53.2
2 A woman told me to turn left after the bridge.
3 I advised him to go to the doctor.
4 She asked me to help her. / ... asked me if I could help her.
5 I told him to come back in ten minutes.
6 Paul let me use his phone.
7 I told her not to phone before 8 o'clock. / ... not to call (me) before 8 o'clock.
8 Amy's mother taught her to play the piano.

UNIT 54

54.1
2–4
I went to a coffee shop to meet a friend.
I went to the chemist to get some medicine.
I went to the market to buy some vegetables.

54.2
2 to read the newspaper
3 to open this door
4 to get some fresh air
5 to wake him up
6 to see who it was

54.3
Example answers:
2 to talk to you now
3 to tell her about the party
4 to do some shopping
5 to buy a motorbike

UNIT 55

55.1
3 to
4 (no preposition)
5 for
6 to
7 on ... to
8 for
9 on
10 to
11 (no preposition)
12 on
13 for
14 on

55.2
2 went fishing
3 goes swimming
4 going skiing
5 go shopping
6 went jogging
Key to Exercises

55.3
2 to university
3 shopping
4 to sleep
5 home
6 skiing
7 riding
8 for a walk
9 on holiday ... to Portugal

UNIT 56

56.1
2 get your boots
3 get a doctor
4 get a taxi
5 gets the job
6 get some milk
7 get a ticket
8 get a good salary
9 get a lot of rain
10 get a new laptop

56.2
2 getting dark
3 getting married
4 getting ready
5 getting late

56.3
2 get wet
3 get married
4 gets angry
5 got better

56.4
2 got to Bristol at 11.45.
3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.
4 (Example answer) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o'clock.

56.5
2 got off
3 got out of

UNIT 57

57.1
2 do
3 make
4 made
5 did
6 do

2 They're/They are doing (their) homework.
3 He's/He is doing the shopping. or He is shopping.
4 She's/She is making a jacket.

5 They're/They are doing an exam. (or ... taking an exam.)
6 He's/He is making the/his bed.
7 She's/She is doing the washing-up. or She is washing up. / She is doing the dishes. / She is washing the dishes.
8 He's/He is making a (shopping) list.
9 They're/They are making a film.
10 He's/He is taking a picture/photo/photograph.

57.3
2 make
3 done
4 made
5 did
6 doing
7 did

UNIT 58

58.1
3 He doesn't have / He hasn't got
4 Gary had
5 Do you have / Have you got
6 we didn't have
7 She doesn't have / She hasn't got
8 Did you have

58.2
2 She's/She is having a cup of tea.
3 He's/He is having a rest.
4 They're/They are having a good time.
5 They're/They are having dinner.
6 He's/He is having a bath.

58.3
2 have something to eat
3 had a glass of water
4 have a walk
5 had an accident
6 have a look

UNIT 59

59.1
2 him
3 them
4 her

59.2
2 I ... them
3 he ... her
4 they ... us
5 we ... him

59.3
2 I like him.
3 I don't like it.
4 Do you like it?
5 I don't like her.
6 Do you like them?

59.4
2 him
3 them
4 they
5 us
6 it
7 She

59.5
2 Can you give it to him?
3 Can you give them to her?
4 Can you give it to me?
5 Can you give it to them?
6 Can you give them to us?

UNIT 60

60.1
2 her hands
3 our hands
4 his hands

60.2
2 They live with their parents.
3 We live with our parents.
4 Martina lives with her parents.
5 I live with my parents.
6 John lives with his parents.
7 Do you live with your parents?
8 Most children live with their parents.
UNIT 61

61.1 2 mine 6 yours 3 ours 7 mine 4 hers 8 his 5 theirs 61.2 2 yours 3 my ... Mine 4 Yours ... mine 5 her 6 My ... hers 7 their 8 Ours 61.3 3 of hers 4 friends of ours 5 friend of mine 6 friend of his 7 friends of yours 61.4 2 Whose camera is this? It's hers. 3 Whose gloves are these? They're mine. 4 Whose hat is this? It's his. 5 Whose money is this? It's yours. 6 Whose bags are these? They're ours.

UNIT 62

62.1 2 Yes, I know her, but I can't remember her name. 3 Yes, I know them, but I can't remember their names. 4 Yes, I know you, but I can't remember your name. 62.2 2 He invited us to stay with him at his house. 3 They invited me to stay with them at their house. 4 I invited them to stay with me at my house. 5 She invited us to stay with her at her house. 6 Did you invite him to stay with you at your house? 62.3 2 I gave her my phone number, and she gave me hers. 3 He gave me his phone number, and I gave him mine. 4 We gave them our phone number, and they gave us theirs. 5 She gave him her phone number, and he gave her his. 6 You gave us your phone number, and we gave you ours. 7 They gave you their phone number, and you gave them yours. 62.4 2 them 6 us 3 him 7 her 4 our 8 their 5 yours 9 mine

UNIT 63

63.1 2 myself 6 himself 3 herself 7 yourself 4 ourselves 8 yourselves 5 myself 63.2 2 When I saw him, he was by himself. 3 Don't go out by yourself. 4 I went to the cinema by myself.
UNIT 65

65.1
2 a 6 an
3 a 7 a
4 an 8 an
5 a 9 an

65.2
2 a vegetable
3 a game
4 a tool
5 a mountain
6 a planet
7 a fruit
8 a river
9 a flower
10 a musical instrument

65.3
2 He's a shop assistant.
3 She's an architect.
4 He's a taxi driver.
5 He's an electrician.
6 She's a photographer.
7 She's a nurse.
8 I'm a/an...

65.4
2-8
Tom never wears a hat.
I can't ride a bike.
My brother is an artist.
Rebecca works in a bookshop.
Jane wants to learn a foreign language.
Mike lives in an old house.
This evening I'm going to a party.

UNIT 66

66.1
2 boats 8 sandwiches
3 women 9 families
4 cities 10 feet
5 umbrellas 11 holidays
6 addresses 12 potatoes
7 knives

66.2
2 teeth 5 fish
3 people 6 leaves
4 children

66.3
3 ... with a lot of beautiful trees.
4 ... with two men.
5 OK

UNIT 67

67.1
3 a jug
4 water
5 toothpaste
6 a toothbrush
7 an egg
8 money
9 a wallet
10 sand
11 a bucket
12 an envelope

67.2
3 ... a hat.
4 ... a job?
5 OK
6 ... an apple ...
7 ... a party ...
8 ... a wonderful thing.
9 ... an island.
10 ... a key.
11 OK
12 ... a good idea.
13 ... a car?
14 ... a cup of coffee?
15 OK
16 ... an umbrella.

67.3
2 a piece of wood
3 a glass of water
4 a bar of chocolate
5 a cup of tea
6 a piece of paper
7 a bowl of soup
8 a loaf of bread
9 a jar of honey

UNIT 68

68.1
2 a newspaper (or a paper),
some flowers (or a bunch of flowers) and a pen
3 some bananas, some eggs
and some bread (or a loaf of bread)
4 some toothpaste, some soap
(or a bar of soap) and a comb

68.2
2 Would you like some coffee?
(or ... a cup of coffee?)
3 Would you like a biscuit?
4 Would you like some bread?
(or ... a piece of bread? / a slice of bread?)
5 Would you like a chocolate?
6 Would you like some cake?
(or ... a piece of cake?)

UNIT 69

69.1
3 a
4 the
5 an
6 the ... the
7 a ... a
8 a ... a
9 ... a student ... a journalist
... an apartment near the college ... The apartment is ...
10 ... two children, a boy and a girl. The boy is seven years old, and the girl is three ... in a factory ... doesn't have a job ...
69.2
2 the airport
3 a cup
4 a nice picture
5 the dictionary
6 the floor

69.3
2 ... send me a postcard.
3 What is the name of...
4 ... a very big country.
5 What is the largest ...
6 ... the colour of the carpet.
7 ... a headache.
8 ... an old house near the station.
9 ... the name of the director of the film ...

UNIT 70
70.1
3 ... the second floor.
4 ... the moon?
5 ... the best hotel in this town?
6 OK
7 ... the city centre?
8 ... the end of May.
9 OK
10 ... the first time I met her.
11 OK
12 It's easy to get information from the internet.
13 OK
14 ... on the top shelf on the right.
15 ... in the country about ten miles from the nearest town.

70.2
2 the same time
3 the same age
4 the same colour
5 the same problem

70.3
2 the guitar
3 breakfast
4 television/TV
5 the sea
6 the bottom

70.4
2 the name
3 The sky
4 TV

71.1
2 the cinema
3 hospital
4 the airport
5 home
6 prison

71.2
3 school
4 the station
5 home
6 bed
7 the post office

71.3
2 the cinema
3 go to bed
4 go to prison
5 go to the dentist
6 go to university/college
7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital (American speakers say 'go to the hospital', 'are taken to the hospital'.)

71.4
3 the doctor
4 OK
5 OK
6 OK
7 the bank
8 OK
9 OK
10 the city centre
11 the station
12 OK (American speakers say 'in the hospital'.)
13 OK
14 OK
15 the theatre

UNIT 71
71.1
2 the cinema
3 hospital
4 the airport
5 home
6 prison

71.2
3 school
4 the station
5 home
6 bed
7 the post office

71.3
2 the cinema
3 go to bed
4 go to prison
5 go to the dentist
6 go to university/college
7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital (American speakers say 'go to the hospital', 'are taken to the hospital'.)

71.4
3 the doctor
4 OK
5 OK
6 OK
7 the bank
8 OK
9 OK
10 the city centre
11 the station
12 OK (American speakers say 'in the hospital'.)
13 OK
14 OK
15 the theatre

UNIT 72
72.1
2-8 Example answers:
I don't like dogs.
I hate museums.
I love big cities.
Tennis is all right.
I love chocolate.

72.2
Example answers:
2 I'm not interested in politics.
3 I'm interested in sport.
4 I don't know much about art.
5 I don't know anything about astronomy.
6 I know a little about economics.

72.3
3 friends
4 parties
5 The shops
6 the milk
7 milk
8 basketball
9 buildings
10 The water
11 cold water
12 the salt
13 the people
14 Vegetables
15 The houses
16 the words
17 pictures
18 the pictures
19 English ... international business
20 Money ... happiness

UNIT 73
73.1
3 Sweden
4 The Amazon
5 Asia
6 The Pacific
7 The Rhine
8 Kenya
9 The United States
10 The Andes
11 Bangkok
12 The Alps
13 The Red Sea
14 Jamaica
15 The Bahamas
73.2
3 OK
4 the Philippines
5 the south of France
6 the Regal Cinema
7 OK
8 the Museum of Art
9 OK
10 Belgium is smaller than the Netherlands.
11 the Mississippi ... the Nile
12 the National Gallery
13 the Park Hotel in Hudson Road
14 OK
15 The Rocky Mountains are in North America.
16 OK
17 the United States
18 the west of Ireland
19 OK
20 The Panama Canal joins the Atlantic Ocean and the Pacific Ocean.

UNIT 74
74.1
2 that house
3 these postcards
4 those birds
5 this seat
6 These plates

74.2
2 Is that your umbrella?
3 Is this your book?
4 Are those your books?
5 Is that your bicycle/bike?
6 Are these your keys?
7 Are those your keys?
8 Is this your watch?
9 Are those your glasses?
10 Are these your gloves?

74.3
2 that's
3 This is
4 That's
5 that
6 this is
7 That's
8 that's

UNIT 75
75.1
2 I don't need one
3 I'm going to get one
4 I don't have one / I haven't got one
5 I've just had one
6 there's one in Mill Road

75.2
2 a new one
3 a better one
4 an old one
5 a big one
6 a different one

75.3
2 Which ones?
3 Which one?
4 Which ones?
5 Which one?
6 Which one?
7 Which one?
8 Which ones?
9 Which one?

75.4
2 something
3 anything
4 anything
5 Somebody/Someone
6 anything
7 anybody/anyone
8 something
9 anything
10 anybody/anyone

UNIT 77
77.1
2 There are no shops near here.
3 Carla has no free time. / Carla has got no free time.
4 There's no light in this room.
5 There isn't any milk in the fridge.
6 There aren't any buses today.
7 Tom doesn't have any brothers or sisters. / Tom hasn't got any brothers or sisters.

77.2
2 any
3 any
4 no
5 any
6 no
7 any

77.3
2 no money
3 any questions
4 no friends
5 no difference
6 any furniture
7 no idea
8 any heating
9 no queue

77.4
Example answers:
2 Three.
4 None.
3 Two cups.
5 None.

UNIT 78
78.1
2 There's nobody in the office.
3 I have nothing to do. / I've got nothing to do.
4 There's nothing on TV.
5 There was no-one at home.
6 We found nothing.
Key to Exercises

UNIT 79

79.1
2 something
3 somewhere
4 somebody/someone

79.2
2a Nowhere.
3a Nothing.
4a Nobody/No-one.
2b I'm not going anywhere.
3b I don't want anything.
4b I'm not looking for anybody/anyone.

79.3
3 anything
4 anything
5 somebody/someone
6 something
7 anybody/anyone ... nobody/no-one
8 anything
9 Nobody/No-one
10 anybody/anyone
11 Nothing
12 anywhere
13 somewhere
14 anything
15 anybody/anyone

UNIT 80

80.1
2 Every day
3 every time
4 every word

80.2
2 every day
3 all day
4 every day
5 all day
6 all day
7 every day

80.3
2 every
3 all
4 all
5 Every
6 all
7 every

80.4
2 everything
3 Everybody/Everyone
4 everything
5 everywhere
6 Everybody/Everyone
7 everywhere
8 Everything

80.5
2 is
3 has
4 likes
5 has
6 was

81.1
3 Some
4 Most of
5 Most
6 any of
7 all or all of
8 None of
9 any of
10 Most
11 most of
12 Some
13 All or All of
14 some of
15 most of

81.2
2 All of them.
3 Some of them.
4 None of them.
5 Most of them.
6 None of it.

81.3
3 Some people...
4 Some of the questions...
5 OK
6 All insects...
7 OK (or... all of these books)
8 Most of the students...
9 OK
10 ... most of the night.

UNIT 82

82.1
3 Both
4 Neither
5 Both
6 neither of
7 Either
8 neither of
9 Neither
10 either of
11 Both
12 neither of
13 Both
14 either of

82.2
2 Both windows are open.
3 Neither man is wearing a hat. or Neither of them is wearing ...
4 Both men have (got) beards. or Both of them have ...
5 Both buses go to the airport. or ... are going to the airport.
6 Neither answer is correct.
Key to Exercises

82.3
3 Both of them are students.
4 Neither of them has a car. ...
5 Both of them live in London.
6 Both of them like cooking.
7 Neither of them can play the piano.
8 Both of them eat seafood.
9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

UNIT 83

83.1
2 many 8 many
3 much 9 How many
4 many 10 How much
5 many 11 How much
6 much 12 How many
7 much

83.2
2 much time
3 many countries
4 many people
5 much luggage
6 many times

83.3
2 a lot of interesting things
3 a lot of accidents
4 a lot of fun
5 a lot of traffic

83.4
3 a lot of snow
4 OK
5 a lot of money
6 OK
7 OK
8 a lot

83.5
3 She plays tennis a lot.
4 He doesn’t use his car much. (or ... a lot.)
5 He doesn’t go out much. (or ... a lot.)
6 She travels a lot.

UNIT 84

84.1
2 a few 5 a little
3 a little 6 a few
4 a few

84.2
2 a little milk
3 A few days

84.3
2 very little coffee
3 very little rain
4 very few hotels
5 very little time
6 Very few people
7 very little work

84.4
2 A few 5 few
3 a little 6 a little
4 little 7 little

84.5
2 ... a little luck
3 ... a few things
4 OK
5 ... a few questions
6 ... few people
7 OK

UNIT 85

85.1
2 I like that green jacket.
3 Do you like classical music?
4 I had a wonderful holiday.
5 We went to a Japanese restaurant.

85.2
2 black clouds
3 long holiday
4 hot water
5 fresh air
6 sharp knife
7 dangerous job

85.3
2 It looks new.
3 I feel ill.
4 You look surprised.
5 They smell nice.
6 It tastes horrible.

85.4
2 It doesn’t look new.
3 You don’t sound American.
4 I don’t feel cold.
5 They don’t look heavy.
6 Maybe, but it doesn’t taste good.

UNIT 86

86.1
2 badly
3 quietly
4 angrily
5 fast
6 dangerously

86.2
2 work hard
3 sleep well
4 win easily
5 Think carefully
6 know her very well
7 explain things very clearly/well
8 Come quickly

86.3
2 angry
3 slowly
4 slow
5 careful
6 hard
7 suddenly
8 quiet
9 badly
10 nice (See Unit 85C.)
11 quickly

86.4
2 well
3 good
4 well
5 well
6 good ... good

UNIT 87

87.1
2 bigger
3 slower
4 more expensive
5 higher
6 more dangerous

87.2
2 stronger
3 happier
4 more modern
5 more important
6 better
7 larger
8 more serious
9 prettier
10 more crowded

87.3
2 hotter/warmer
3 more expensive
UNIT 88
88.1
3 Kate is taller than Ben.
4 Kate starts work earlier than Ben.
5 Ben works harder than Kate.
6 Ben has more money than Kate. / Ben has got more money...
7 Kate is a better driver than Ben.
8 Ben is more patient than Kate.
9 Ben is a better dancer than Kate. / Ben dances better than Kate.
10 Kate is more intelligent than Ben.
11 Kate speaks French better than Ben. / Kate speaks better French than Ben. / Kate's French is better than Ben's.
12 Ben goes to the cinema more than Kate. / ... more often than Kate.

88.2
2 You're older than her. / ... than she is.
3 You work harder than me. / ... than I do.
4 You watch TV more than him. / ... than he does.
5 You're a better cook than me. / ... than I am. / You cook better than me. / ... than I do.
6 You know more people than us. / ... than we do.
7 You have more money than them. / ... than they have.
8 You can run faster than me. / ... than I can.
9 You've been here longer than her. / ... than she has.
10 You got up earlier than them. / ... than they did.
11 You were more surprised than him. / ... than he was.

UNIT 89
89.1
2 A is longer than B, but not as long as C.
3 C is heavier than A, but not as heavy as B.
4 A is older than C, but not as old as B.
5 B has got more money than C; but not as much as A. / ... but less (money) than A.
6 C works harder than A, but not as hard as B.

89.2
2 Your room isn't as big as mine. / ... as my room.
3 I didn't get up as early as you. / ... as you did.
4 They didn't play as well as us. / ... as we did.
5 You haven't been here as long as me. / ... as I have.
6 He isn't as nervous as her. / ... as she is.

UNIT 90
90.1
2 C is longer than A. D is the longest. B is the shortest.
3 D is younger than C. B is the youngest. C is the oldest.
4 D is more expensive than A. C is the most expensive. A is the cheapest.
5 A is better than C. A is the best. D is the worst.

90.2
2 the happiest day
3 the best film
4 the most popular singer
5 the worst mistake
6 the prettiest village
7 the coldest day
8 the most boring person

UNIT 91
91.1
2 enough chairs
3 enough paint
4 enough wind
Key to Exercises

91.2
2 The car isn't big enough.
3 His legs aren't long enough.
4 He isn't strong enough.

91.3
3 old enough
4 enough time
5 big enough
6 eat enough
7 enough space
8 tired enough
9 practise enough

91.4
2 sharp enough to cut
3 warm enough to go
4 enough bread to make
5 well enough to win
6 enough time to read

UNIT 92

92.1
2 too heavy
3 too low
4 too fast
5 too big
6 too crowded

92.2
3 enough 8 enough
4 too many 9 too
5 too 10 too many
6 enough 11 too much

92.3
3 It's too far.
4 It's too expensive.
5 It isn't/It's not big enough.
6 It was too difficult.
7 It isn't good enough.
8 I'm too busy.
9 It was too long.

92.4
2 too early to go to bed
3 too young to get married
4 too dangerous to go out at night
5 too late to phone Sue (now)
6 too surprised to say anything

UNIT 93

93.1
3 I like this picture very much.
4 Tom started his new job last week.

93.2
5 OK
6 Jessica bought a present for her friend. or Jessica bought her friend a present.
7 I drink three cups of coffee every day.
8 OK
9 I borrowed fifty pounds from my brother.

93.3
2 I got a new phone last week.
3 Paul finished his work quickly.
4 Emily doesn't speak French very well.
5 I did a lot of shopping yesterday.
6 Do you know London well?
7 We enjoyed the party very much.
8 I explained the problem carefully.
9 We met some friends at the airport.
10 Did you buy that jacket in England?
11 We do the same thing every day.
12 I don't like football very much.

UNIT 94

94.1
2 He always gets up early.
3 He's/He is never late for work.
4 He sometimes gets angry.
5 He rarely goes swimming.
6 He's/He is usually at home in the evenings.

94.2
2 Susan is always polite.
3 I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
4 Sarah has just started a new job.
5 I rarely go to bed before midnight.
6 The bus isn't usually late.
7 I don't often eat fish.
8 I will never forget what you said.
9 Have you ever lost your passport?
10 Do you still work in the same place?
11 They always stay in the same hotel.
12 Jane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
13 Is Tina usually work on Saturdays?
14 What do you usually have for breakfast?
15 I can never remember his name.

94.3
2 Yes, and I also speak French.
3 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
4 Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
5 Yes, and I also bought some books.

94.4
1 They both play football.
   They're/They are both students.
   They've both got cars. / They both have cars.
2 They're/They are all married.
   They were all born in England.
   They all live in New York.
UNIT 95

95.1
2 Do you still live in Clare Street?
3 Are you still a student?
4 Have you still got a motorbike? / Do you still have a motorbike?
5 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
6 Do you still want to be a teacher?

95.2
2 He was looking for a job. He's/He is still looking (for a job).
He hasn't found a job yet.
3 She was asleep. She's/She is still asleep. She hasn't woken up yet. / She isn't awake yet. or She hasn't got up yet. / She isn't up yet.
4 They were having dinner. / They were eating. They're/They are still having dinner. / ... still eating. They haven't finished (dinner) yet. / They haven't finished eating yet.

95.3
2 Is Helen here yet? or Has Helen arrived/come yet?
3 Have you got your (exam) results yet? / Have you had your ... / Have you received your ... 
4 Have you decided where to go yet? / Do you know where you're going yet?

95.4
3 She's/She has already gone/ left.
4 I've already got one. / I already have one.
5 I've/I have already paid (it). 
6 He already knows.

UNIT 96

96.1
2 He gave it to Gary.
3 He gave them to Sarah.
4 He gave it to his sister.
5 He gave them to Robert.
6 He gave it to a neighbour.

96.2
2 I gave Joanna a plant.
3 I gave Richard a tie.
4 I gave Emma some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
5 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
6 I gave Kevin a wallet.

96.3
2 Can you lend me an umbrella?
3 Can you give me your address?
4 Can you lend me twenty pounds?
5 Can you send me more information?
6 Can you show me the letter?

96.4
2 lend you some money
3 send the bill to me
4 buy you a present
5 pass me the sugar
6 give it to her
7 showed the policeman my identity card

UNIT 97

97.1
3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.
4 I wanted to phone you, but I didn't have your number.
5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.
6 I usually drive to work, but I went by bus this morning.
7 Do you want me to come with you, or shall I wait here?

97.2
Example answers:
2 because it was raining. / because the weather was bad.
3 but it was closed.
4 so he didn't eat anything. / so he didn't want anything to eat.
5 because there was a lot of traffic. / because the traffic was bad.

97.3
Example answers:
3 I went to the cinema, but the film wasn't very good.
4 I went to a café and met some friends of mine.
5 There was a film on television, so I watched it.
6 I got up in the middle of the night because I couldn't sleep.

UNIT 98

98.1
2 When I'm tired, I like to watch TV.
3 When I knocked on the door, there was no answer.
4 When I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.
5 When the programme ended, I turned off the TV.
6 When I got to the hotel, there were no rooms.

98.2
2 when they heard the news
3 they went to live in New Zealand
4 while they were away
5 before they came here
6 somebody broke into the house
7 they didn't believe me

98.3
2 I finish
3 it's
4 I'll be ... she leaves
5 stops
6 We'll come ... we're
7 I'll bring
8 I'm
9 it gets
10 I'll tell ... I'm

98.4
Example answers:
2 you finish your work
3 I'm going to buy a motorbike
4 you get ready
5 I won't have much free time
6 I come back
UNIT 99
99.1
2 If you pass the exam, you'll get a certificate.
3 If you fail the exam, you can do it again.
4 If you don't want this magazine, I'll throw it away.
5 If you want those pictures, you can have them.
6 If you're busy now, we can talk later.
7 If you're hungry, we can have lunch now.
8 If you need money, I can lend you some.
99.2
2 I give
3 is
4 I'll call
5 I'll be ... get
6 Will you go ... they invite
99.3
Example answers:
3 ... you're busy.
4 ... you'll feel better in the morning.
5 ... you're not watching it.
6 ... she doesn't study.
7 ... I'll go and see Chris.
8 ... the weather is good.
9 ... it rains today.
99.4
2 When
3 If
4 If
5 if
6 When
7 if
8 when ... if

UNIT 100
100.1
3 wanted
4 had
5 were/was
6 didn't enjoy
7 could
8 tried
9 didn't have
101.3
2 who
3 which
4 which
5 who
6 which
7 who
8 who
9 which

100.2
3 I'd go / I would go
4 she knew
5 we had

100.3
2 I'd watch it / I would watch it
3 we had some pictures on the wall
4 the air would be cleaner
5 every day was/were the same
6 I'd be bored / I would be bored
7 we had a bigger house / we bought a bigger house
8 we would/could buy a bigger house or we would/could have a bigger house

100.4
Example answers:
2 I'd go to Antarctica
3 I didn't have any friends
4 I'd buy a house if I had enough money.
5 I'd try and help
6 there were no guns

UNIT 101
101.1
2 A butcher is a person who sells meat.
3 A musician is a person who plays a musical instrument.
4 A patient is a person who is ill in hospital.
5 A dentist is a person who takes care of your teeth.
6 A fool is a person who does stupid things.
7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.
8 A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

101.2
2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.
3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).
4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.
5 Did you find the keys you were looking for?
6 Where is the party you're going to?
7 What's the name of the film you were talking about?
8 What's that music you're listening to?
9 Did you get the job you applied for?
Key to Exercises

UNIT 103

103.1
2 at 11 at
3 on 12 in
4 in 13 on
5 in 14 on
6 on 15 at
7 on 16 at
8 at 17 at*
9 on 18 in
10 at 19 at*
* American speakers say ‘on the weekend’.

103.2
2 on 11 at*
3 at 12 on*
4 in 13 in
5 in 14 at
6 in 15 in
7 on 16 on
8 on 17 in
9 in 18 at
10 at 19 at*
* American speakers say ‘on the weekend’.

103.3
2 on Friday
3 on Monday
4 at 4 o’clock on Thursday (afternoon) / on Thursday (afternoon) at 4 o’clock
5 on Saturday evening
6 at 2.30 on Tuesday (afternoon) / on Tuesday (afternoon) at 2.30

103.4
2 I’ll call you in three days.
3 My exam is in two weeks.
4 Tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.

103.5
3 in
4 – (already complete)
5 – (already complete)
6 in
7 at*
8 – (already complete)
9 – (already complete)
10 on
11 in
12 at
* American speakers say ‘on the weekend’.

UNIT 104

104.1
2 Alex lived in Canada until 2009.
3 Alex has lived in England since 2009.
4 Karen lived in France until 2011.
5 Karen has lived in Switzerland since 2011.
6 Clare worked in a restaurant from 2010 to 2012.
7 Clare has worked in a hotel since 2012.
8 Adam was a teacher from 2002 to 2008.
9 Adam has been a journalist since 2008.
10 Alex has lived in England for ... years.
11 Karen has lived in Switzerland for ... years.
12 Clare worked in a restaurant for two years.
13 Clare has worked in a hotel for ... years.
14 Adam was a teacher for six years.
15 Adam has been a journalist for ... years.

104.2
2 until 9 since
3 for 10 until
4 since 11 for
5 Until 12 until
6 for 13 Since
7 for 14 for
8 until

UNIT 105

105.1
2 after lunch
3 before the end
4 during the course
5 before they went to Australia
6 during the night
7 while you’re waiting
8 after the concert
9 – (already complete)
10 on
11 in
12 at

UNIT 106

106.1
2 In the box.
3 On the box.
4 On the wall.
5 At the bus stop.
6 In the field.
7 On the balcony.
8 In the pool.
9 At the window.
10 On the ceiling.
11 On the table.
12 At the table.

106.2
2 in
3 on
4 in
5 on
6 at
7 in
8 in
9 at
10 at
11 in
12 at
13 on
14 at
15 on the wall in the living room

307
UNIT 107

107.1
1 At the airport.
2 In bed.
3 On a ship.
4 In the sky.
5 At a party.
6 At the doctor's.
7 On the second floor.
8 At work.
9 In a taxi.
10 At a wedding.

107.2
2 at 9 in
3 in 10 in
4 at 11 on
5 at 12 on
6 at 13 at
7 at 14 in
8 at 15 on

UNIT 108

108.1
1 to 6 to
2 in 7 to
3 in 8 in
4 at 9 on
5 at 10 in

108.2
3 to
4 to
5 at home ... to work
6 at
7 at 11 on
8 to
9 at
10 at a restaurant ... to the hotel

108.3
2 to
3 to
4 in
5 to
6 to
7 at
8 to
9 to
10 at
11 at
12 to Maria's house ... at home
13 - (already complete)
14 meet at the party... go to the party

108.4
1 to
2 - (already complete)
3 at
4 in
5 to
6 - (already complete)

108.5
Example answers:
2 to work
3 at work
4 to Canada
5 to parties
6 at a friend's house

UNIT 109

109.1
1 next to / beside / by
2 in front of
3 between
4 next to / beside / by
5 in front of
6 behind
7 on the left
8 in the middle

109.2
2 behind
3 above
4 in front of
5 on
6 by / next to / beside
7 below / under
8 above
9 under
10 by / next to / beside
11 opposite
12 on

109.3
2 The fountain is in front of the theatre.
3 The bank/bookshop is opposite the theatre. or Paul's office is opposite the theatre. or The theatre is opposite ...
4 The bank/bookshop / supermarket is next to ...
5 Paul's office is above the bookshop.
6 The bookshop is between the bank and the supermarket.

UNIT 110

110.1
1 Go under the bridge.
2 Go up the hill.
3 Go down the steps.
4 Go along this street.
5 Go into the hotel.
6 Go past the hotel.
7 Go out of the hotel.
8 Go over the bridge.
9 Go through the park.

110.2
1 off
2 over
3 into
4 out of
5 across
6 round/around
7 through
8 on
9 round/around
10 into the house through a window

110.3
1 out of
2 round/around
3 in
4 from here to the airport
5 round/around
6 on/over
7 over
8 out of / from

UNIT 111

111.1
1 on time
2 on holiday
3 on the phone
4 on TV

111.2
2 by
3 with
4 about
5 on
6 by
7 at
8 on
9 with
10 about grammar by Vera P. Bull

111.3
1 with 6 by
2 without 7 on
3 by 8 with
4 about 9 at
5 at 10 by
11 about
12 by
13 on
14 with
15 by
16 by

UNIT 112

112.1
1 in
2 to
3 at
4 at
5 with
6 of
7 from/to (You can also say different than ...)
8 in
9 for
10 about
11 of
12 for/about getting angry with you

112.3
2 interested in going
3 good at getting
4 fed up with waiting
5 sorry for/about waking
6 Thank you for waiting.

112.4
2 Sue walked past me without speaking.
3 Don't do anything without asking me first.
4 I went out without locking the door.

Example answers:
2 I'm scared of the dark.
3 I'm not very good at drawing.
4 I'm not interested in cars.
5 I'm fed up with living here.

UNIT 113

113.1
2 to
3 for
4 to

113.2
2 at
3 to
4 about
5 of
6 of
113.3
1 at
2 after
3 after
4 at
5 of/about

Example answers:
3 It depends on the programme.
4 It depends (on) what it is.
5 It depends on the weather.
6 It depends (on) how much you want.

UNIT 114

114.1
2 went in
3 looked up
4 rode off/away
5 turned round/around
6 got off
7 sat down
8 got out

114.2
2 away
3 round/around
4 going out ... be back
5 down
6 over
7 back
8 in
9 up
10 going away ... coming back

UNIT 115

115.1
2 She took off her hat. or She took her hat off.
3 He put down his bag. or He put his bag down.
4 She picked up the magazine. or She picked the magazine up.
5 He put on his sunglasses. or He put his sunglasses on.
6 She turned off the tap. or She turned the tap off.

115.2
2 He put his jacket on.
3 She took off her glasses.
4 I picked the phone up.
5 They gave the key back.
6 We turned off the lights.

UNIT 116

116.1
2 take it back
3 picked them up
4 switched it off
5 bring them back

116.2
3 knocked over
4 look it up
5 throw them away
6 tried on
7 showed me round
8 gave it up or gave up (without it)
9 fill it in
10 put your cigarette out
### Key to Additional exercises

#### 1
1. Kate is a doctor.
2. The children are asleep.
3. Gary isn’t hungry.
4. The books aren’t on the table.
5. The hotel is near the station.
6. The bus isn’t full.

#### 2
1. She’s / she is
2. Where are
3. Is he
4. It’s / it is
5. I’m / I am or. No, I’m not. I’m a student.
6. What colour is
7. Is it
8. Are you
9. How much are they?

#### 3
1. He’s / He is having a shower.
2. Are the children playing?
3. Is it raining?
4. They’re / They are coming now.
5. Why are you standing here? I’m / I am waiting for somebody.

#### 4
1. Sam doesn’t want
2. Do you want
3. Does Helen live
4. Sarah knows
5. I don’t travel
6. Do you usually get up
7. They don’t go out
8. Tom always finishes
9. Does Jessica do... She works
10. How long were you there? / How long did you stay there?

#### 5
1. She’s / She is a student.
2. She hasn’t got a car. or. She doesn’t have a car.
3. She goes out a lot.
4. She’s got / She has got a lot of friends. or. She has a lot of friends.
5. She doesn’t like London.
6. She likes dancing.
7. She isn’t / She’s not interested in sport.

#### 6
1. Are you married? Where do you live? Have you got any children? or. Do you have any children? How old is she?
2. How old are you? What do you do? / Where do you work? / What’s your job? Do you like / enjoy your job? Have you got a car? or. Do you have a car? Do you (usually) go to work by car?
3. What’s his name? / What’s he called? What does he do? / What’s his job? Does he live / work in London?
4. Sonia is 32 years old.
5. I’ve got two sisters. or. I have two sisters.
6. We often watch TV in the evening.
7. Amy never wears a hat.
8. A bicycle has got two wheels. or. ... has two wheels.
9. These flowers are beautiful.
10. Emma speaks German very well.

#### 7
1. Are you cooking
2. Plays
3. I’m going
4. It’s raining
5. I don’t watch
6. We’re looking
7. Do you pronounce
8. We go
9. Is shining
10. Are you going
11. Do you go
12. She writes
13. I never read
14. They’re watching
15. She’s talking
16. Do you usually have
17. He’s visiting
18. I don’t drink

#### 8
1. We went
2. Found
3. Was
4. Had
5. Told
6. Gave
7. Were
8. Thought
9. Invited / asked
10. How old are you? How old are they?

#### 9
1. Did you get / come back?
2. Where do you live?
3. Have you got any children?
4. How old is she?
5. Did you speak
6. Did you have
7. He didn’t go
8. She arrived
9. Did Robert live
10. The meal didn’t cost

#### 10
1. Did you usually have
2. She arrived
3. She didn’t go
4. She didn’t have a bike.
5. He wasn’t a quiet child.

#### 11
1. He was good at sport.
2. He played football.
3. He had a lot of friends.
4. He didn’t work hard at school.
5. Where did you stay?
6. Was the weather good?
7. When did you get / come back?

#### 12
1. Sonia is 32 years old.
2. I’ve got two sisters. or. I have two sisters.
3. We often watch TV in the evening.
4. Amy never wears a hat.
5. A bicycle has got two wheels. or. ... has two wheels.
6. These flowers are beautiful.
7. Emma speaks German very well.

#### 13
1. Did you like / enjoy Amsterdam?
2. Where did you stay?
3. Was the weather good?
4. When did you get / come back?

#### 14
1. We were working
2. Opened
3. Rang ... was cooking
4. Heard ... looked
5. Was looking ... happened
6. Wasn’t reading ... was watching
7. Didn’t read
8. Finished ... paid ... left
9. Did she arrive
10. Saw ... was walking ... was waiting

#### 15
1. She’s visiting
2. She is playing
3. She doesn’t like
6 did your parents go
7 saw ... was driving
8 Do you watch
9 were you doing
10 goes
11 'm/am trying
12 didn't sleep

16
3 it's/it has just finished/ended.
4 I've/l have found them. or I've got them.
5 I haven't read it.
6 Have you seen her?
7 I've/l have had enough.
8 Have you (ever) been to Sweden?
9 We've/We have (just) been to the cinema.
10 They've/They have gone to a party.
11 He's/He has (just) woken up.
12 How long have you lived here? or ... have you been living here?
13 we've/we have known each other for a long time.
14 It's/It has been raining all day. or It has rained all day. or It has been horrible/bad all day.

17
3 's/has been
4 for
5 since
6 has he lived / has he been / has he been living
7 for
8 've/have been

18 Example answers:
3 I've just started this exercise.
4 I've met Sarah a few times.
5 I haven't had lunch yet.
6 I've never been to Australia.
7 I've lived here since I was born.
8 I've lived here for three years.

19
3 bought/got
4 went
5 've/have read or read or 've/have finished with
6 haven't started (it) or haven't begun (it)

20
3 He's/He has already gone.
4 she left at 4 o'clock.
5 How many times have you been there?
6 I haven't decided yet.
7 It was on the table last night.
8 I've eaten there a few times.
9 What time did they arrive?

21
1 When was the last time? or When did you go the last time?
2 How long have you had it?
3 How long have you lived there / have you been there / have you been living there? Before that we lived in Mill Road.
4 How long did you live in Mill Road?
5 How long have you worked there / have you been working there?
What did you do before that? I was a taxi driver. or I worked as a taxi driver.

22 Example answers:
2 I didn't go out last night.
3 I was at work yesterday afternoon.
4 I went to a party a few days ago.
5 It was my birthday last week.
6 I went to America last year.

23
2 B 9 C
3 D 10 D
4 A 11 A
5 A 12 C
6 D 13 B
7 C 14 C
8 B 15 A

24
1 was damaged ... be knocked down
2 was built ... is used ... is being painted
3 is called ... be called ... was changed
4 have been made ... are produced

25
2 is visited
3 were damaged
4 be built
5 is being cleaned
6 be forgotten
7 has already been done
8 be kept
9 Have you ever been bitten
10 was stolen

26
2 My car was stolen last week.
3 All the bananas have been eaten.
4 The machine will be repaired.
5 We're/We are being watched.
6 The housework has to be done.

27
3 pushed
4 was pushed
5 has taken
6 is being repaired
7 invented
8 was the camera invented
9 have been washed or were washed
10 I've/I have washed them. or I washed them.
11 did they send or have they sent
12 be sent

28
2 B 8 B
3 A 9 B
4 C 10 A
5 B 11 B
6 C 12 C
7 C
Key to Exercises

29
1 I stayed
did you do
I watched
Are you going
I'm going
are you going to see
I don't know. I haven't decided
2 have you been
We arrived
are you staying / are you
going to stay
do you like
we're having
3 I'm going ... Do you want
are you going
Have you ever eaten
I've been ... I went
4 I've lost ... Have you seen
You were wearing ... I came
I'm not wearing
Have you looked / Did you look
I'll go

30
1 we met
2 we sat / we were sitting
3 We didn't know
4 we became
5 we liked
6 we spent
7 We left
8 we meet
9 has been
10 she's working
11 She's coming
12 she comes
13 we'll have / we're going to have
14 It will be

31
2 we're staying
3 we enjoyed
4 We watched
5 slept
6 I don't sleep
7 we're not doing / we aren't doing / we aren't going to do
8 we're going
9 to see
10 We haven't decided
11 wants
12 to go

32
2 A 11 B
3 B 12 A
4 C 13 C
5 B 14 B
6 C 15 C
7 B 16 A
8 A 17 C
9 C 18 B
10 A

33
2 a car
3 the fridge
4 a teacher
5 school
6 the cinema
7 a taxi
8 the piano
9 cars
10 the same

34
4 a horse
5 The sky
6 a tourist
7 for lunch (-)
8 the first President of the United States
9 a headache
10 remember names (-)
11 the next train
12 send emails (-)
13 the garden
14 the Majestic Hotel
15 ill last week (-) ... to work (-)
16 the highest mountain in the world
17 to the radio ... having breakfast (-)
18 like sport (-) ... is basketball (-)
19 a doctor ... an art teacher
20 the second floor ... the top of the stairs ... on the right
21 After dinner (-) ... watched TV (-)
22 a wonderful holiday in the south of France (-)

35
2 in 12 at
3 on 13 at
4 at 14 in
5 on 15 at
6 in 16 on
7 since 17 by
8 on 18 for ... on
9 by 19 to ... in
10 in 20 at ... in
11 for
### Key to Study guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Verb forms</th>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Reported speech</th>
<th>-ing and to ...</th>
<th>Go, get, do, make and have</th>
<th>Pronouns and possessives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>11.1 E</td>
<td>12.1 B</td>
<td>13.1 A, D</td>
<td>14.1 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>11.2 A, B, D</td>
<td>12.2 D</td>
<td>13.2 C</td>
<td>14.2 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>11.3 E</td>
<td>12.3 B</td>
<td>13.3 C, D</td>
<td>14.3 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>11.4 A, B, D</td>
<td>12.4 C</td>
<td>13.4 A, D</td>
<td>14.4 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>C,D</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>11.5 A</td>
<td>12.5 B, C</td>
<td>13.5 B</td>
<td>14.5 B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>11.6 A</td>
<td>12.6 C</td>
<td>13.6 D</td>
<td>14.6 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>11.7 A</td>
<td>12.7 A</td>
<td>13.7 C</td>
<td>14.7 E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>11.8 A</td>
<td>12.8 D</td>
<td>13.8 B</td>
<td>14.8 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>11.9 A</td>
<td>12.9 C, E</td>
<td>13.9 A</td>
<td>14.9 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.10</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>10.10</td>
<td>11.10 C, E</td>
<td>12.10 B</td>
<td>13.10 A</td>
<td>14.10 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>10.11</td>
<td>11.11 A</td>
<td>12.11 A</td>
<td>13.11 A</td>
<td>14.11 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>10.15</td>
<td>11.15 A</td>
<td>12.15 C</td>
<td>13.15 B</td>
<td>14.15 B, C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.16</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>10.16</td>
<td>11.16 A</td>
<td>12.16 C</td>
<td>13.16 B</td>
<td>14.16 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>A,D</td>
<td>10.18</td>
<td>11.18 A</td>
<td>12.18 E</td>
<td>13.18 D</td>
<td>14.18 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>10.20</td>
<td>11.20 A</td>
<td>12.20 D</td>
<td>13.20 C</td>
<td>14.20 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>10.21</td>
<td>11.21 A</td>
<td>12.21 A</td>
<td>13.21 A</td>
<td>14.21 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.22</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>10.22</td>
<td>11.22 E</td>
<td>12.22 C</td>
<td>13.22 E</td>
<td>14.22 E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.23</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>10.23</td>
<td>11.23 E</td>
<td>12.23 D</td>
<td>13.23 D</td>
<td>14.23 D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>10.27</td>
<td>11.27 E</td>
<td>12.27 A</td>
<td>13.27 A</td>
<td>14.27 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.28</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>10.28</td>
<td>11.28 E</td>
<td>12.28 D</td>
<td>13.28 C</td>
<td>14.28 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.29</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>10.29</td>
<td>11.29 A</td>
<td>12.29 C</td>
<td>13.29 B</td>
<td>14.29 B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.30</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>10.30</td>
<td>11.30 A</td>
<td>12.30 D</td>
<td>13.30 C</td>
<td>14.30 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>Auxiliary verbs</td>
<td>9.1 C</td>
<td>14.1 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>B,E</td>
<td>9.2 A</td>
<td>14.2 C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>9.3 C</td>
<td>14.3 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>9.4 B</td>
<td>14.4 B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>9.5 B</td>
<td>14.5 B, C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>9.6 C</td>
<td>14.6 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.6</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>9.7 D</td>
<td>14.7 E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>9.8 B</td>
<td>14.8 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>9.9 B</td>
<td>14.9 D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>9.10 C</td>
<td>14.10 C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.10</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>9.11 C</td>
<td>14.11 A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Key to Study Guide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A and the</th>
<th>Adjectives and adverbs</th>
<th>Prepositions</th>
<th>Determiners and pronouns</th>
<th>Word order</th>
<th>Conjunctions and clauses</th>
<th>Phrasal verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15.1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.3</td>
<td>A, C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.7</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.8</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.9</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.10</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.11</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.12</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.13</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.14</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>A, C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.8</td>
<td>B, D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.9</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.10</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.11</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.12</td>
<td>B, D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.13</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.14</td>
<td>A, B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.15</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.16</td>
<td>A, C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.17</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.18</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.19</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.1</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.3</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.4</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.5</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.6</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.7</td>
<td>A, C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.8</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.9</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.10</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.11</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.12</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.13</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.14</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.4</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>A, D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.2</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.3</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.4</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.5</td>
<td>B, C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.6</td>
<td>A, B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.7</td>
<td>B, D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.8</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.1</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.2</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3</td>
<td>C, D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>A, D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.7</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.8</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.9</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.10</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.11</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.12</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.13</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.14</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.15</td>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.16</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.17</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.18</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.19</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.20</td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.2</td>
<td>A, B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.3</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

314
Index

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

a/an 65
  a and some 67–68
  a/an and the 69
about 111E
above 109E
active and passive Appendix 1
across 110
adjectives 85
  adjectives and adverbs (quick/quickly) 86
  comparatives (older / more expensive) 87–89
  superlatives (the oldest / the most expensive) 90
  get + adjective (get tired etc.) 56B
  possessive adjectives (my/your/her etc.) 60, 62
adjectives and adverbs
  get + adjective (get tired etc.) 56B
  possessive adjectives (my/your/her etc.) 60, 62
adjectives + preposition (afraid of etc.) 112A
adverbs 86
  word order (always / usually / often etc.) 94
advise (advise somebody to ...) 53B
afraid (of) 112A
after 98, 105
ago 19B
all
  all and every etc. 80
  all (of) 81
  word order 94
already 95C
  already + present perfect 16B
  word order 94
also (word order) 94
always
  always + present simple 5C
  word order 94
am/is/are 1–2
  am/is/are + -ing (present continuous) 3–4, 23A, 25, 51C
  was/were 10
  was/were + -ing (past continuous)
    13, 23A, 51C
  have/has been (present perfect) 15–18
passive 21–22, Appendix 1
will be 27
because 97
been
  have/has been (present perfect) 15–18
  been and gone 17C
before 98, 105
begin (begin to ... or begin -ing) 52C
behind 109A
belong (to) 113A
beside 109A
best 90B
better 87D
between 109A
bit (a bit older/bigger etc.) 88D
born 21C
both 82
  word order 94
but 97
by
  by after the passive (I was bitten by a dog.) 21D
  by myself / by yourself etc. 63C
  by (= beside) 109C
can/can’t 30
comparative (older / more expensive etc.) 87–89
conditional (if ...)
  if I do ... 99
  if I did ... 100
conjunctions 97–100
  and / but / or / because 97
  when / before / while / after / until 98
  if 99–100
continue (continue to ... or continue -ing) 52C
contractions (short forms – I’m, it’s, you’ve etc.) Appendix 4
could / couldn’t 30C–D
countable and uncountable nouns 67–68
depend (on) 113C
did
  didn’t in negatives 12, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A
  did in questions 12, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A
different (from) 112A
direct speech and reported speech 50
do and make 57
  don’t / doesn’t in negatives 6, 23D, 40C, 43B, 51A
did / does in questions 7, 23D, 40C, 44B, 51A
don’t go / don’t fall etc.
  (imperative) 35B
down 110
  sit down / put down etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
during 105

anybody / anyone / anything 76D, 78–79
anywhere 79
apostrophe (I’m, it’s etc.) Appendix 4
apostrophe’s (my brother’s car) 64
are
  see am/is/are
around 110, 114–115, Appendix 7
arrive 108C
articles (a/an / the) 65–73
a/an 65, 67–68
a/an and the 69
the 70–73
as (not as ... as) 89
ask
  ask somebody to ... 53B
  ask somebody for ... 113A
at
  at 8 o’clock / at night etc. 103
  at the bus stop / at work etc.
    106–107
  at and to 108
  at the age of ... 111B
auxiliary verbs
  away
    run away / throw away etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
back
  come back / give back etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
because 97
been
  have / has been (present perfect) 15–18
can’t go
  don’t / doesn’t fall etc.
  (imperative) 35B
down 110
  sit down / put down etc. (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
during 105
### Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>each other</td>
<td>63D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>either</td>
<td>42A, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embedded questions</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>end (at the end of)</td>
<td>103B, 106B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>52B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geographical names</td>
<td>63A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enough</td>
<td>91, 92D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ever</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word order</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>everybody/everyone/everything/everywhere</td>
<td>80C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>52A, 53B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>39A, 47D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How far is it?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>further</td>
<td>87B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>86C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fed up (with)</td>
<td>112A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>few/a few</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish (finish -ing)</td>
<td>52B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for</td>
<td>19, 104D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for ten minutes / for three years etc.</td>
<td>19, 104D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for to...</td>
<td>54B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go for a walk</td>
<td>55C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for and during</td>
<td>105C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from</td>
<td>104A, 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>front (in front of)</td>
<td>109A–B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>full (of)</td>
<td>112A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>further</td>
<td>87B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>25–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'm working tomorrow</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The concert starts at 7.30. (present continuous)</td>
<td>25C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(I'm) going to (do something)</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will</td>
<td>27–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shall</td>
<td>27D, 28C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future after when/before/while etc.</td>
<td>98B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future after if</td>
<td>99B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geographical names</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with and without the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerund</td>
<td>see -ing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get to (a place)</td>
<td>56C, 108C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get on / get up etc. (phrasal verbs)</td>
<td>114, Appendix 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long have you ... ?</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(present perfect)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how big? / how old? / how far? etc.</td>
<td>47D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How long does it take?</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>how much? / how many?</td>
<td>83A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I / you / he / she etc.</td>
<td>59, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(personal pronouns)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if</td>
<td>99–100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if we go / If you see etc.</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if and when</td>
<td>99C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>if I had / if we went</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you know if ... ?</td>
<td>49C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperative</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do this / don't do that</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in April / in summer etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in a room / in hospital etc.</td>
<td>106–107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in five minutes / in three years etc.</td>
<td>103E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in and to</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put something in</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs)</td>
<td>114–115, Appendix 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitive</td>
<td>51, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitive (do/see/play etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitive (do/see etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and to + infinitive</td>
<td>51B, 52–53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitive and -ing (do/doing etc.)</td>
<td>51–52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I went to the shop to buy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(infinitive for purpose)</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infinitive and for ...</td>
<td>54B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adjective + infinitive</td>
<td>39B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>something to eat / nowhere to go etc.</td>
<td>79D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ing (doing/playing/going etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am/is/are + -ing (present continuous)</td>
<td>3–4, 23A, 25, 51C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was/were + -ing (past continuous)</td>
<td>13, 23A, 51C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ing and infinitive</td>
<td>51–52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(do/doing etc.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbs + -ing (enjoy -ing etc.)</td>
<td>52B–C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go -ing (go swimming etc.)</td>
<td>55D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prepositions + -ing</td>
<td>105D, 112B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interested (in)</td>
<td>112A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>into</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irregular verbs</td>
<td>11C, 24B, Appendix 2–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>39, 59B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>39, 39A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see am/is/are</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>its</td>
<td>60C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>its and its</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>just + present perfect</td>
<td>16A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word order</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Note:** The text is a listing of terms from a dictionary, with references to pages where they are defined or discussed. The entries cover a variety of grammatical terms and usages, such as prepositions, verb conjugations, and phrasal verbs. There is also a section dedicated to geographical names. The page numbers suggest that this is a reference material, likely for language learners or students of English. The layout and formatting are typical of such reference texts, with entries arranged alphabetically and each entry accompanied by further reading or reference numbers. The content is comprehensive, covering a wide range of linguistic phenomena, from basic verbs like "give" and "finish" to more complex structures involving modals, infinitives, and prepositions. The page numbers indicate that the entries are also cross-referenced with other entries for context and related topics. The text is clear and concise, making it a useful tool for anyone studying English grammar.
Index

phrasal verbs (get up / put on etc.) 114–115, Appendix 6–7
plural (cup → cups / man → men etc.) 66
police (plural) 66D
possession adjectives (my/your/his etc.) 60, 62
possession pronouns (mine/yours/his etc.) 61–62
prefer 52C–D
prepositions 103–113
at/on/in (time) 103
for/since 19, 104
until 104A–B
before/after/during/while 105
in/at/on (places) 106–107
to/in/at (places) 108
on 103, 106–107, 109A, 111A
at 103, 106–108, 111B
under/behind/opposite etc. (position) 109
up/over/through etc. (movement) 110
by 109C, 111C
with/without 111D, 112B
about 111E
prepositions + -ing (in -ing / without -ing etc.) 105D, 112B
adjective + prepositions (afraid of etc.) 112A
verb + preposition (listen to / wait for etc.) 113
prepositions at the end (Who is she talking to?) 46
prepositions in relative clauses (the man she is talking to) 102B

present continuous (am/is/are + -ing) 3–4, 23A, 51C
negative (I'm not -ing) 3
questions (are you -ing?) 4
present continuous (I am doing) and present simple (I do) 8
present continuous passive 22A, Appendix 1.1
preconistant continuous for the future (What are you doing tomorrow?) 25

present perfect (I have done) 15–20, 23C

present perfect + just 16A
present perfect + already 16B
present perfect + yet 16C, 95B
Have you ever ... ? 17
gone and been 17C
How long have you ... ? 18
present perfect + for/since 18–19
present perfect continuous (I have been -ing) 18B
present perfect (I have done) and past simple (I did) 20
present perfect passive 22B, Appendix 1.1
regular and irregular verbs 15B, 24, Appendix 2–3

present simple (I work / she works etc.) 5–7, 23D
negative (don't/doesn't) 6, 43B
questions (do/does ... ?) 7, 44B
present simple + always/usually/never etc. 5C
present simple (I do) and present continuous (I am doing) 8
present simple passive (the room is cleaned) 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1
present simple for the future (The concert starts at 7.30.) 25C
present simple after when/while etc. 98B
present simple after if 99B

promise (promise to ...) 52A

pronouns
personal pronouns (I/me/you etc.) 59, 62
possessive pronouns (mine/yours/his etc.) 61–62
reflexive pronouns (myself/yourself etc.) 63
one/ones 75
relative pronouns (who/which/that) 101–102

put
put something in etc. 110
put on / put out etc. (phrasal verbs) 115, Appendix 7

questions 44–47
am/is/are ... ? 2
do/does ... ? (present simple) 7, 44B
did ... ? (past simple) 12, 44B
Why don't ... ? / Why isn't ... ? etc. 44C
Who saw you? / Who did you see? 45
preposition at the end (Who is she talking to?) 46
What / Which / How ... ? 47
How long does it take? 48
Do you know where ... ? (embedded questions) 49
reply questions (Have you? / Are you? etc.) 41A
question tags (... do you? / ... isn't it? etc.) 41B

reflexive pronouns (myself/yourself etc.) 63
regular and irregular verbs 11, 24, Appendix 2–3
relative clauses 101–102
relative pronouns (who/which/that) 101–102
reply questions (Have you? / Are you?) 41A

reported speech
He said that ... / He told me that ... 50
He told me to ... 53B–C
right (on the right) 109A
round 110
turn round / show round (phrasal verbs) 114–115, Appendix 7
's (apostrophe's) 64, Appendix 4.5
same 70B, 89E
say/said 50
He said that ... (reported speech) 50
say and tell 50B
scared (of) 112A
shall 27D, 28C
short forms (I'm / it's / you've etc.) Appendix 4
should 32
simple past see past simple
simple present see present simple
since 19A, 104C
singular and plural (flower → flowers) 66
so
so am I / so do I etc. 42B
I was tired, so I went to bed. 97
some
some and a/an 67–68
some and any 76
some (of) 81
somebody/someone/
something/somewhere 76, 79
sometimes
sometimes + present simple 5C
word order 94
sorry (sorry about and sorry for) 112A

speak (to) 113A
spelling Appendix 5
start (start to ... and start -ing) 52C
still 95
word order 94
stop (stop -ing) 52B
suggest (suggest -ing) 52B
superlative (the biggest / the most expensive etc.) 90
Essential Grammar in Use

With answers • Fourth Edition
A self-study reference and practice book for elementary learners of English

Clear examples and easy-to-follow exercises make Essential Grammar in Use perfect for independent study. Used by millions of learners around the world, it covers all the grammar you will need at this level.

• Easy-to-use format of two-page units with clear explanations on the left and exercises on the right
• A study guide to help you find the units you need to study
• Additional exercises for extra practice

Want more grammar practice? The Essential Grammar in Use Extra Activities app and Essential Grammar in Use Supplementary Exercises book are also available.

CEFR Levels A1, A2, B1

Also available: Essential Grammar in Use Fourth Edition eBook
English Grammar in Use Fourth Edition with answers
Essential Grammar in Use Extra Activities app